









2L  
E1283dcMo

Elementary Classics.

GAI IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO CIVILI  
COMMENTARIORUM I.

Edited with Notes and Vocabulary for the use of Schools.

BY

MALCOLM MONTGOMREY, M.A.

London  
MACMILLAN AND CO.  
AND NEW YORK  
1891

*All rights reserved.*



17235  
3/11/91

6



## PREFACE.

IN the text of this book I have followed implicitly that of Kraner and Hofmann's *De Bello Civili*, tenth and much improved edition, 1890. By adopting some excellent emendations of Madvig and other scholars, Hofmann has got rid of several blemishes which disfigured the common text. Though not dealing with properly critical matter, I have always called attention to the vulgate where it involves a serious difference in translation or a real difficulty, for the sake of boys in a mixed class, where all may not use the same text.

In a few cases information has been added in the Index which might have been given in the Notes.

I must express my obligations to Kraner and Hofmann's Commentary, as well as to Mr. Moberly's excellent edition in the Clarendon Press. In the Historical Sketch I have followed Kraner pretty closely, and to those who wish for a fuller treatment of the subject I can recommend Mr. Froude's most interesting *Caesar*.



vii

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction, - - - - -	ix
Text, - - - - -	1
Notes, - - - - -	62
Vocabulary, - - - - -	100
Index, - - - - -	139

## MAPS.

Plan of Camp, - - - - -	xxvi
Map of part of Italy, - - - - -	<i>- facing page 7</i>
Map of Spain, - - - - -	<i>- facing page 28</i>



## INTRODUCTION.

### I. HISTORICAL SKETCH.

IN order to understand the causes of the civil war it is necessary to know something not only of Caesar's military career, the history of which he has given us in the eight books *De Bello Gallico*, but of his previous life as a politician, and especially of his relations with Pompey, who was for some years his friend and ally, and then became his bitter enemy.

It would take far too much space to attempt to vindicate Caesar's unconstitutional actions, especially the high-handed course pursued by the First Triumvirate and their setting aside of the Senate's authority. This has been ably done by Mr. Froude in his *Caesar*, as well as by others; but any one who reads Sallust's sketches of the corruption and incapacity of senatorial rule in the *Catiline* and *Jugurtha* must see that the old order of things had become thoroughly rotten and unworkable. Caesar saw this clearly and acted accordingly, but he had to contend against a mass of prejudice, and the "vested interests" of the nobility,

pledged to maintain at all costs the old system, and at last fell a victim to their selfish revenge, when his work of reform was only begun.

§ 1. We will take up the history at the year 61 B.C. when Pompey returned from the East after concluding the Mithridatic War with splendid success, bringing home a vast sum of money to the treasury, unlike Lucullus and other generals who had enriched themselves enormously in the wars. He was then unquestionably the greatest man at Rome, but was regarded with great jealousy by nobles like Lucullus and Metellus, who had not gained such a reputation for honesty and ability. He had pledged himself to provide handsomely for the soldiers who had helped to win his victories, but was violently opposed in the senate by his rivals, and so found himself obliged, in 60 B.C., to seek help from the popular party, which was then led by Caesar. The latter had just returned from Spain, where he had been *propraetor*, and needed some powerful support in order to win the consulship for 59 B.C. He persuaded Pompey to form an alliance with the millionaire M. Crassus, urging that his enormous wealth would be a great help to them, and probably regarding him as a kind of counterpoise to Pompey's power. So an agreement was made between these three with the object of preventing any measure being passed which was displeasing to any one of them. This alliance is known as the *First Triumvirate*.

§ 2. Caesar was duly elected consul, and carried a number of useful laws called after him *Leges Juliae*, in spite of the opposition of the nobles and of his colleague Bibulus. Among these was the *Lex Julia agraria*, which was designed to reward Pompey's veterans, and provided that the public land in Campania should be parcelled out among 20,000 of the poorer citizens who had three or more children, the Asiatic treasure to be used in buying land, if the public land were not sufficient. Another measure was intended to gain the support of the *Equites*, or Knights, who were an important body in the state. It granted the farmers of the taxes (*publicani*) in Asia a remission of one-third of the sum they had agreed to pay the Senate for the privilege of collecting the taxes, as their offer had been too high. A third enactment ratified all Pompey's arrangements in Asia, which the Senate had not agreed to do. Lastly, a law of the tribune Vatinius secured for Caesar himself the government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with extensive powers. To these provinces the Senate reluctantly added Transalpine Gaul, which was then limited to the so-called *Provincia* or Provence. Thus the Senate's power was broken, and Caesar entered on the career of conquest which is recorded for us in the *De Bello Gallico*. His object was to free his country from the one serious external danger which threatened her; it is not necessary to assume, as is so often done, that his motive was to form and

train a standing army with which he might establish his own supremacy, a result to which he was afterwards driven by circumstances.

§.3. Meanwhile Pompey, who though a great soldier was no politician, did not succeed in keeping order at Rome. Now that Caesar was gone the mob had their own way, and the disorder which prevailed led to a reaction in favour of the Senate. To check this the Triumvirs with their chief supporters met in conference at Lucca, 56 B.C., where they resolved on strong measures. Pompey and Crassus became consuls 55 B.C., and passed various laws in their own and Caesar's interest. Pompey obtained the two Spanish provinces, Crassus that of Syria for five years with extensive powers, and Caesar's command in Gaul was prolonged for five years more by a law of the two consuls.

§ 4. The bond between Caesar and Pompey had been greatly strengthened by Pompey's marriage with Caesar's only daughter Julia, but her death in 54 B.C., followed soon after by that of her child, who would have been Caesar's heir, removed the link of affection between the two statesmen. In the next year Crassus perished miserably in a rash expedition against the Parthians, and thus the rivalry, which had been more or less hidden while he held the balance of power, became very apparent. Pompey's pride could not brook an equal, and Caesar would not acknowledge a superior. Events soon produced

a conflict of interests between them, and gave the senatorial party, or *Optimates*, an opportunity to draw Pompey to their side, as they hoped first to crush Caesar by his means, and afterwards to get rid of him too.

§ 5. This was in 52 B.C., on occasion of a violent fray between two desperadoes, Clodius and Milo, in which the former was killed. He was a champion of the democratic party, Milo of the Senate, and terrible riots ensued, during which, among other outrages, the Senate house was burned by the mob. In this emergency the Senate appointed Pompey sole consul, with power to levy troops and take other needful measures. He put down the disorder with a strong hand, brought Milo, who was a candidate for the consulship, to trial, and secured his exile. In this consulship Pompey first showed his altered attitude towards Caesar by choosing as his colleague Q. Caecilius Metellus Scipio (one of Caesar's strongest enemies), and marrying his daughter Cornelia. Besides getting his own command in Spain prolonged for five years, he carried some important laws, including one called *Lex Pompeia de Provinciis*, providing that the government of provinces should no longer be entrusted to consuls and praetors immediately at the close of their term of office, but after an interval of at least five years. This made it easier for the Senate to give the provinces to none but their own partisans. Under another of Pompey's laws, *De Ambitu*, it was hoped

that Caesar might be brought to trial and condemned on his return to Rome. He was at this time engaged in putting down the great revolt in Gaul, headed by Vercingetorix ; however, his friends succeeded in getting a law passed by the ten tribunes, enacting that, when his command in Gaul was about to expire, he should be allowed to become a candidate for the consulship without going to Rome (*ut eius ratio absentis haberetur*, ch. 32). This, however, did not quite secure Caesar from danger, as his command was to expire on March 1st, 49 B.C., and he would not enter on the consulship till January 1st, 48, so it would be needful also to get his command prolonged till the latter date. But the most serious blow was aimed at Caesar, after the passing of this law by the ten tribunes, when by a law, *De Jure Magistratum*, carried by Pompey, any candidature for an office while absent from Rome was forbidden in general terms without making an exception in favour of Caesar, and thus the special law or *Privilegium* just mentioned was virtually repealed. Pompey promised indeed to secure this special privilege for Caesar, but as he had no power to cancel by his own authority a law passed by the people, this assurance was worth nothing.

§ 6. In the following year, B.C. 51, the consul, M. Marcellus, proposed, firstly, that Caesar should be recalled before the termination of his command on the ground that the war in Gaul was over ; and secondly, that he should not be allowed to stand for



the consulship while away from Rome, because the *Privilegium* in his favour had been repealed by a subsequent law. However, only the latter of these resolutions was passed by the Senate, as many of its members wished to secure themselves in any event, and the discussion about the province was fixed to come off at the latest in March of that year.

§ 7. For the year 50 B.C., which seemed likely to settle the contest one way or the other, Caesar secured the support of the tribune C. Scribonius Curio by undertaking to pay his debts, which were enormous. Curio professed to be a strong supporter of the Senate and opponent of Caesar, but at the same time made himself very popular and secured a pretext for quarrelling with the Senate by proposing some measures for the benefit of the lower orders. So in March, when the discussion about the provinces was to begin, Curio announced that he would put his 'veto' on the discussion in the Senate of any other subject till his proposals should be considered and voted on by the people. In April came the senatorial 'recess' (*discessus senatus*), and it was not till May that the discussion really took place, on Curio withdrawing his opposition. He then declared that it was for the public interest that Caesar should be recalled, but that in that case Pompey too should give up his provinces and armies, as, if he retained them, he would be equally dangerous to the public liberty; he therefore urged the speedy recall of both

at once, but announced that he would oppose that of either general singly.

§ 8. Curio at once became extremely popular, and Pompey, seeing that public feeling was against him, informed the Senate that he was ready to resign his provinces and armies if the public interest required it, and a debate consequently took place about this proposal. The majority of the Senate voted that Pompey's recall should be agreed to, if Caesar's could not be secured otherwise, but that Caesar alone should be recalled, if possible. The recall of both was moved by C. Marcellus, but at his private instigation a senator demanded that the votes respecting Caesar and Pompey should be taken separately. The result was that Caesar's recall was voted almost unanimously, as his supporters had pledged themselves to vote for the recall of both, while that of Pompey was rejected by a large majority. The tribune Curio at once vetoed this resolution, and by an exercise of his official privilege demanded that a vote should next be taken on both proposals together, the result of which was that a large majority now voted for the recall of both rivals. However, this was vetoed in turn by a hostile tribune, so the discussion closed in June without any result being arrived at either way.

§ 9. The party of the Senate, however, succeeded in considerably weakening Caesar's army. The Parthians were now threatening Syria and Cilicia, and to protect these provinces C. Marcellus proposed

that Caesar and Pompey should each furnish one legion which was to be sent to Asia immediately. Pompey had previously lent Caesar a legion for the war in Gaul, and this he now demanded back as his contribution for Syria. Caesar had to send one of his own legions as well, but instead of being sent on to Asia the legions were detained in Italy, to be used, when required, against Caesar himself.

§ 10. At the consular elections in July of this year two violent enemies of Caesar were elected, L. Lentulus and C. Marcellus, while he could only count on the support of two of the tribunes, M. Antonius and Q. Cassius Longinus. In August he came into Northern Italy, and during September travelled about the towns of Gallia Cisalpina under the pretext of supporting M. Antonius in his candidature for the augurship. This visit to Italy caused great excitement and alarm at Rome, as it was reported that Caesar was rapidly collecting his forces for an invasion. On the strength of this report the consul elect, C. Marcellus, proposed in the Senate that the two legions which had been taken from Caesar should be sent for to defend the city, that troops should be levied throughout all Italy, and supreme command of all the forces of the State entrusted to Pompey. Curio by his veto prevented this vote from becoming a legal decree,<sup>1</sup> and the majority of the Senate did not dare to support Marcellus in his proposal to deal

<sup>1</sup>Such a vote was technically called *Senatus auctoritas*.

summarily with the tribune. He therefore on his own responsibility called upon Pompey to undertake the defence of the State, and on Pompey accepting the charge, Curio, no longer feeling safe at Rome, fled to Caesar.

§ 11. Meanwhile Caesar had returned to Further Gaul, and there mustered his legions, ordering the thirteenth to proceed to Italy. He now returned to Cisalpine Gaul about the middle of November. He still would not break off negotiations, wishing the odium and responsibility of a war to fall on his enemies, so that public opinion might be on his side. Accordingly he proposed three successive compromises:—1. That he and Pompey should both resign their provinces, and that he should then return to Rome as a private citizen and become a candidate for the consulship. 2. That Pompey should keep his provinces and armies, if he himself were only allowed to retain Cisalpine Gaul with two legions till he became consul. 3. That he should retain Illyricum alone, with one legion. These proposals were discussed without any result by Pompey and his friends, but not in the Senate, and it was not till January 1st, 49 B.C., when Caesar's letter was delivered to the new consuls by Curio, that a public discussion on the subject took place. At this point the first book of the *De Bello Civili* begins, being really a continuation of the history from the eighth book *De Bello Gallico*, the end of which is lost.

Contrary to his custom in the *De Bello Gallico*, where each book contains the events of a whole year, Caesar divides the events of the year 49 B.C. between Books 1 and 2 of the *De Bello Civili*.

## II. THE ROMAN ARMY.

§ 1. In Caesar's time the organization of the army had been considerably modified. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each containing three maniples of Hastati, Principes, and Triarii respectively; and each of these in turn was composed of two centuries, usually called *ordines*, one of which was called *prior*, the other *posterior*, each under a centurion. A century theoretically contained 100 men, but at this period it had rarely more than fifty or sixty, thus a maniple had from 100 to 120, a cohort 300 to 360, and a legion (which perhaps never contained more than 5000 men) usually was only 3000 or 3600 strong.

§ 2. The Hastati, Principes and Triarii were not now distinguished, as in earlier times, by fighting in the first, second and third lines of the legion, nor by any difference in their equipment, all being armed with the *pilum*, which originally belonged to the Triarii alone, the other two lines being sometimes called *antepilani*. The names were probably retained more to distinguish the rank of the centurions than for anything else, the Triarii as before ranking highest,

the *Hastati* lowest, while the *priores* came before the *posteriores*. Of the ten cohorts again the first was the most honourable and the others followed in order, but it is a disputed point how the precedence of the centurions was determined. The usual view is that all the *hastati posteriores* took lowest rank, beginning with the officer of the tenth cohort, who was called *decimus hastatus posterior*, and going on to the first cohort; next came all the *hastati priores* from the tenth (*decimus hast. prior*) to the first cohort; then the *principes posteriores*, rising in the same order; then in like manner the *principes priores*. The centurions bore the same name as the centuries which they respectively commanded. Among the *Triarii* they were called *pili*, perhaps because originally this line alone carried the *pilum*, thus the junior officer of *Triarii* in the tenth cohort was *decimus pilus posterior*, the senior *decimus pilus prior*, and so on. The first officer among the *Triarii* was senior centurion of the whole legion, and was called *centurio primi pili*, *primus pilus* or *primipilus*; he was often said *primum pilum ducere*. He had special charge of the eagle (*aquila*) of the legion, though it was carried by an *aquilifer*.

According to this view the first ten centurions of the legion would be the *pili priores*, next the ten *pili posteriores*; then the *principes priores* and *posteriores*, ten of each, followed by ten *hastati priores*, and, lastly, ten *hastati posteriores*. But it is hardly likely that Caesar would have said of Q. Fulginius (ch. 46) that

“on account of his surpassing valour he had risen from lower posts” to that of *primus hastatus*, if this had only been the forty-first place among sixty centurions. There seems little doubt that the six officers of the first cohort at any rate took precedence of all the rest, so that Fulginus was fifth or sixth centurion of the legion, and probably those of the other cohorts took rank according to the number of their cohort. In Livy xlii. 34, a centurion named Ligustinus relates that he was first promoted from the ranks to command the *decimus ordo hastatus*; then to the *primus hastatus prioris centuriæ*, next to the *primus princeps prioris centuriæ*, and, finally, led the *primus pilus*. The promotion on which he dwells with most satisfaction as having been awarded by M. Porcius Cato, “the keenest observer and judge of valour among all living commanders,” was to this very post of *primus hastatus prior* held by Fulginus.

§ 3. The defensive armour of the legionary consisted of a helmet, corselet, greaves, and shield. The helmet usually worn (*galea*) was of leather and bronze with a crest of red or black feathers, and on account of its weight was not put on except when the enemy was in sight: the corselet (*lorica*) was also of leather in thick overlapping strips, with a square plate of iron to protect the chest. The form and material were modified in later times. The greaves (*ocreae*) were of bronze, reaching above the knee, but it was usual at this time to wear only one, on the right leg. The

shield (*scutum*) was about 4 feet long by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  broad, of strong wood covered with hide, with a metal rim at top and bottom, and a projecting boss in the centre (*umbo*). It was curved round slightly so as to protect the sides.

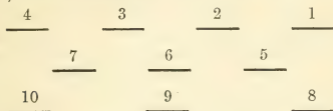
The offensive weapons were a short straight two-edged sword (*gladius*) which was worn on the right side by a belt going over the left shoulder, and a couple of *pila* or javelins. This missile consisted of a wooden shaft  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet long, partly covered by an iron point of the same length, so that the whole measured rather less than 7 feet. It could be hurled with a rotary motion to a great distance.

Besides this weight of weapons and armour, the soldier on the march had to carry his own provisions, usually enough for a fortnight, cooking utensil, basket, some stakes (*valli*), a spade for entrenching, and a hatchet or saw. These things were collectively called *sarcinae*, usually weighing some 45 lbs. (English), and the soldier when carrying them was called *impeditus*, without them *expeditus*. The heavy baggage of the legion, such as tents, handmills, and engines of war, was called *impedimenta*, and carried by mules and other beasts of burden (*iumenta*).

§ 4. The usual formation for battle was in three lines—the *triplex acies* described in ch. 83. The first four cohorts of each legion formed the first line, beginning with the first cohort on the extreme right, and with spaces between equal to the front of a



cohort. The next three cohorts were posted in the second line, opposite the vacant spaces in the first line, while the remaining three formed the third line, thus,



The object of this chequer formation was to enable the first line to retire, if hard pressed, without throwing the second line into confusion. The men were drawn up ten deep. The standards (*signa*) of the cohorts were carried by *signiferi*. The foremost ranks of the first four cohorts, who marched before them, were called *antesignani*; they were the best men, and seem to have numbered about 200 in each legion (see chs. 43 and 57).

§ 5. In Caesar's time the *Velites*, or light-armed troops, of earlier times had been replaced by foreign auxiliaries, chiefly slingers (*funditores*) from the Balearic Isles, and archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete. They were usually stationed in the intervals of the cohorts, and being light troops could easily withdraw and leave room for the legionaries to advance or retreat. The old Roman legionary cavalry (*equites*) had also disappeared, and in their stead troops of Gallic, German, or Spanish horsemen were employed. They

were commanded by a Roman, and divided into *alae*, *turmae*, and *decuriae*. Other auxiliary troops were levied in the provinces, as the eighty Spanish cohorts mentioned in ch. 39, some of which were *scutatae*, *i. e.*, armed in the regular Roman fashion with the *scutum*, the others *cetratae*, armed with the native *cetra*, a light leather buckler. These auxiliary cohorts were also called *alariae*, a term formerly applied to the Italian *Socii*, ch. 83. Caesar had also German light infantry (*Germani levis armaturae*, ch. 83), and his opponents had a similar corps of Lusitani, ch. 48.

§ 6. The highest officers under the *imperator*, or commander-in-chief, were the *legati*, or commanders of brigades, who were appointed by the Senate, usually three in number, but in Gaul Caesar had ten. They were frequently intrusted with the charge of important expeditions or fortified camps.

The quaestors were properly civil magistrates appointed to look after the revenues of the provinces. In war they had charge of the military chest, paid the troops, and disposed of the booty, slaves, etc.

The highest *legionary* officers were the *tribuni militum*, six to each legion, only one of whom seems to have been on duty at a time. They were appointed by the state on the general's recommendation, and controlled the discipline of the camp, but were not usually intrusted with important military operations.

The centurions, sixty to each legion, were appointed

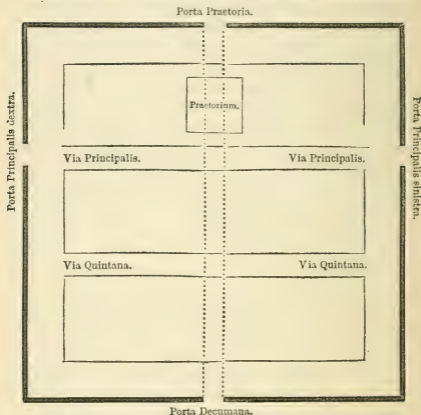
by the general himself, always for tried merit and distinguished service.

Soldiers who had served the number of campaigns required by law could be again called out by a special summons of the commander-in-chief. They were then called *evocati*, had the same rank and pay as centurions, and were exempted from sentinel duty and entrenching work.

§ 7. Attached to each Roman army was a corps of engineers (*fabri*) who had charge of the engines of war (*catapultae, ballistae*) and constructed the towers (*turres*), mantlets (*testudines*), and penthouses (*vineae*), required in siege operations. Their chief officer was called *praefectus fabrum* (ch. 24). But many of the duties of modern 'engineers' were performed by the legionary soldiers, who carried tools with them, and all worked at the lines of the camp, which was entrenched wherever the army halted for a night.

§ 8. The plan of construction of a camp was as follows:—Two roads were marked out at right angles to each other, one fifty feet broad, called the *Via praetoria*, running along the length of the camp from the *Porta praetoria*, which was usually on the side nearest the enemy, to the *Porta decumana* on the opposite side, so called because the quarters of the rear-most cohorts (*decumae cohortes*) lay there. The other road, 100 feet broad, called *Via principalis*, ran across between the *Porta principalis dextra* and *sinistra*, and divided the camp into two unequal parts, one-

third and two-thirds respectively. The smaller portion contained the Praetorium, or general's quarters, with the place of assembly, and quarters of the legati, quaestors and tribunes: the general's body-guard



(*cohors praetoria*, ch. 75) also was quartered here. The larger part was assigned to the legionaries, cavalry, and auxiliaries, and was itself cut in two by a broad road, the *Via quintana*, running parallel to

the *Via principalis*. No tents were pitched within 200 feet of the wall (*vallum*) of the camp, so that the enemy could not reach them with missiles or set them on fire.

The accompanying plan shows the main lines of the camp, though the exact position of the Praetorium is disputed. The *vallum* was built up of turf, earth, etc., and was usually finished off with a palisade of strong stakes (*valli*) at the top. There was a trench (*fossa*) running round outside, from which the earth and turf were taken. This had to be filled up by the enemy before they could advance to the assault of the *vallum*.



C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO CIVILI  
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

---

1. Litteris a C. Caesare consulibus redditis, aegre ab his impetratum est summa tribunorum plebis contentione, ut in senatu recitarentur; ut vero ex litteris ad senatum referretur, impetrari non potuit. Referunt consules de republica infinite. L. Lentulus consul senatui rei quae publicae se non defuturum pollicetur, si audacter ac fortiter sententias dicere velint; sin Caesarem respiciant, atque eius gratiam sequantur, ut superioribus fecerint temporibus, se sibi consilium 10 capturum neque senatus auctoritati obtemperaturum; habere se quoque ad Caesaris gratiam atque amicitiam receptum. In eandem sententiam loquitur Scipio: Pompeio esse in animo reipublicae non deesse, si

The Senate discusses a letter from Caesar. Pompey's friends urge strong measures. 5

15 senatus sequatur ; si cunctetur atque agat lenius, nequiquam eius auxilium, si postea velit, senatum imploraturum.

2. Haec Scipionis oratio, quod senatus in urbe habebatur Pompeiusque aberat, ex ipsius

The moderate party is borne down, and the veto of two tribunes set aside.

ore Pompei mitti videbatur. Dixerat aliquis leniorem sententiam, ut primo

5 M. Marcellus, ingressus in eam orationem, non oportere ante de ea re ad senatum

referri, quam dilectus tota Italia habiti et exercitus conscripti essent, quo praesidio tuto et libere senatus, quae vellet, decernere auderet ; ut M. Calidius, qui

10 censebat, ut Pompeius in suas provincias proficisceretur, ne qua esset armorum causa : timere Caesarem creptis ab eo duabus legionibus, ne ad eius periculum reservare et retinere eas ad urbem Pompeius videretur ; ut M. Rufus, qui sententiam Calidii

15 paucis fere mutatis rebus sequebatur. Hi omnes convicio L. Lentuli consulis correpti exagitabantur.—

Lentulus sententiam Calidii pronuntiaturum se omnino negavit. Marcellus perterritus conviciis a sua sententia discessit. Sic vocibus consulis, terrore

20 praesentis exercitus, minis amicorum Pompei plerique compulsi inviti et coacti Scipionis sententiam sequuntur : uti ante certam diem Caesar exercitum dimittat ; si non faciat, eum adversus rempublicam facturum videri. Intercedit M. Antonius, Q. Cassius, tribuni

25 plebis. Refertur confestim de intercessione tribunorum. Dicuntur sententiae graves ; ut quisque



acerbissime crudelissimeque dixit, ita quam maxime ab inimicis Caesaris collaudatur.

3. Misso ad vesperum senatu omnes, qui sunt eius ordinis, a Pompeio evocantur. Pompey prepares for war. Laudat Pompeius atque in posterum confirmat, segniore castigat atque incitat. Multi undique ex veteribus Pompei exercitibus spe prae- 5 miorum atque ordinum evocantur, multi ex duabus legionibus, quae sunt traditae a Caesare, arcessuntur. Completur urbs et ipsum comitium tribunis, centurionibus, evocatis. Omnes amici consulum, necessarii Pompei atque eorum, qui veteres inimicitias cum 10 Caesare gerebant, in senatum coguntur; quorum vocibus et concursu terrentur infirmiores, dubii confirmantur, plerisque vero libere decernendi potestas eripitur. Pollicetur L. Piso censor sese iturum ad Caesarem, item L. Roscius praetor, qui 15 de his rebus eum doceant: sex dies ad eam rem conficiendam spatii postulant. Dicuntur etiam ab nonnullis sententiae, ut legati ad Caesarem mittantur, qui voluntatem senatus ei proponant.

4. Omnibus his resistitur omnibusque oratio consulis, Scipionis, Catonis opponitur. Opposition to Caesar led by Cato, Lentulus, Scipio, and Pompey. Catonem veteres inimicitiae Caesaris incitant et dolor repulsae. Lentulus aeris alieni magnitudine et spe exercitus ac 5 provinciarum et regum appellandorum largitionibus movetur, seque alterum fore Sullam inter suos gloriatur, ad quem summa imperii redeat. Scipionem

eadem spes provinciae atque exercituum impellit,  
 10 quos se pro necessitudine partiturum cum Pompeio  
 arbitratur, simul iudiciorum metus, adulatio atque  
 ostentatio sui et potentium, qui in republica iudiciis-  
 que tum plurimum pollebant. Ipse Pompeius, ab  
 inimicis Caesaris incitatus et quod neminem dignitate  
 15 secum exaequari volebat, totum se ab eius amicitia  
 averterat et cum communibus inimicis in gratiam  
 redierat, quorum ipse maximam partem illo affinitatis  
 tempore iniunxerat Caesari; simul infamia duarum  
 legionum permotus, quas ab itinere Asiae Syriaeque  
 20 ad suam potentiam dominatumque converterat, rem  
 ad arma deduci studebat.

5. His de causis aguntur omnia raptim atque  
 turbate. Nec docendi Caesaris propin-  
 quis eius spatium datur nec tribunis  
 plebis sui periculi deprecandi neque  
 5 etiam extremi iuris intercessione reti-  
 nendi, quod L. Sulla reliquerat, facultas  
 tribuitur, sed de sua salute septimo die cogitare  
 coguntur, quod illi turbulentissimi superioribus tem-  
 poribus tribuni plebis octavo denique mense suarum  
 10 actionum respicere ac timere consuerant. Decurritur  
 ad illud extremum atque ultimum senatusconsultum,  
 quo nisi paene in ipso urbis incendio atque in  
 desperatione omnium salutis senatorum audacia num-  
 quam ante descensum est: dent operam consules,  
 15 praetores, tribuni plebis quique pro consulibus sint  
 ad urbem, ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat.

The Senate  
 arms the magis-  
 trates with dic-  
 tatorial power;  
 the two tribunes  
 5 escape to  
 Caesar.

Haec senatusconsulto perscribuntur a. d. VII Id. Ian. Itaque v primis diebus, quibus haberi senatus potuit, qua ex die consulatum iniit Lentulus, biduo excepto comitali et de imperio Caesaris et de amplissimis 20 viris, tribunis plebis, gravissime acerbissimeque decernitur. Profugiunt statim ex urbe tribuni plebis seseque ad Caesarem conferunt. Is eo tempore erat Ravennae exspectabatque suis lenissimis postulatis responsa, si qua hominum aequitate res ad otium 25 deduci posset.

6. Proximis diebus habetur extra urbem senatus. Pompeius eadem illa, quae per Scipionem ostenderat, agit; senatus virtutem constantiamque collaudat; copias suas exponit: legiones habere sese paratas X; praeterea 5 cognitum compertumque sibi, alieno esse animo in Caesarem milites neque iis posse persuaderi, uti eum defendant aut sequantur saltem. De reliquis rebus ad senatum refertur: tota Italia dilectus habeatur: Faustus Sulla propere in Mauretanium mittatur; 10 pecunia uti ex aerario Pompeio detur. Refertur etiam de rege Iuba, ut socius sit atque amicus; Marcellus vero passurum in praesentia negat. De Fausto impedit Philippus, tribunus plebis. De reliquis rebus senatusconsulta perscribuntur. Provin- 15 ciae privatis decernuntur, duae consulares, reliquae praetoriae. Scipioni obvenit Syria, L. Domitio Gallia. Philippus et Cotta privato consilio praeter-euntur, neque eorum sortes deiciuntur. In reliquas

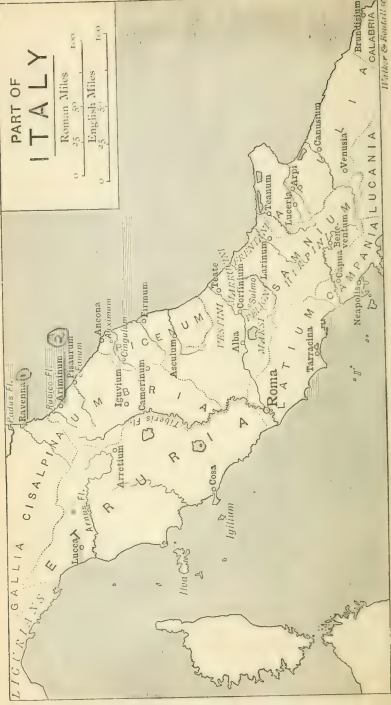
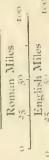
Allotment of provinces and other active measures.

20 provincias praetorii mittuntur. Neque expectant, quod superioribus annis acciderat, ut de eorum imperio ad populum feratur, paludatique votis nuncupatis exeunt. Consules ex urbe proficiscuntur, quod ante id tempus accidit numquam, lictoresque  
 25 habent in urbe et Capitolio privati contra omnia vetustatis exempla. Tota Italia dilectus habentur, arma imperantur, pecuniae a municipiis exiguntur, e fanis tolluntur, omnia divina humanaque iura permiscuntur.

7. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar apud milites con-  
 tionatur. Omnium temporum iniurias  
 Caesar appeals to his troops who promise to support him. inimicorum in se commemorat; a quibus deductum ac depravatam Pompeium  
 5 queritur invidia atque obtréctatione laudis suae, cuius ipse honori et dignitati semper faverit adiutorque fuerit. Novum in republica introductum exemplum queritur, ut tribunicia intercessio armis notaretur atque opprimeretur. Sullam nudata om-  
 10 nibus rebus tribunicia potestate tamen intercessionem liberam reliquisse; Pompeium, qui amissa restituisset videatur bona, etiam quae ante habuerint ademisse. Quotienscumque sit decretum, darent operam magistratus, ne quid respublica detrimenti caperet (qua  
 15 voce et quo senatusconsulto populus Romanus ad arma sit vocatus), factum in perniciosis legibus, in vi tribunicia, in secessione populi, templis locisque editoribus occupatis; atque haec superioris aetatis exempla expiata Saturnini atque Gracchorum casibus



# PART OF ITALY



Walker & Fontall

docet. Quarum rerum illo tempore nihil factum, ne 20  
 cogitatum quidem. Hortatur, cuius imperatoris  
 ductu IX annis rempublicam felicissime gesserent  
 plurimaque proelia secunda fecerint, omnem Galliam  
 Germaniamque pacaverint, ut eius existimationem  
 dignitatemque ab inimicis defendant. Conclamant 25  
 legionis XIII, quae aderat, milites (hanc enim initio  
 tumultus evocaverat; reliquae nondum convenerant):  
 sese paratos esse imperatoris sui tribunorumque plebis  
 iniurias defendere.

8. Cognita militum voluntate Ariminum cum ea  
 legione proficiscitur ibique tribunos He leaves his  
 plebis, qui ad eum confugerant, convenit; province and re-  
 reliquas legiones ex hibernis evocat et ceives messages  
 subsequi iubet. from Pompey, Eo L. Caesar adulescens venit, 5  
 cuius pater Caesaris erat legatus. Is reliquo sermone  
 confecto, cuius rei causa venerat, habere se a Pompeio  
 ad eum privati officii mandata demonstrat: Velle  
 Pompeium se Caesari purgatum, ne ea, quae rei-  
 publicae causa egerit, in suam contumeliam vertat. 10  
 Semper se reipublicae commoda privatis necessi-  
 tudinibus habuisse potiora. Caesarem quoque pro  
 sua dignitate debere et studium et iracundiam suam  
 reipublicae dimittere neque adeo graviter irasci  
 inimicis, ut, cum illis nocere se speret, reipublicae 15  
 noceat. Pauca eiusdem generis addit cum excusatione  
 Pompei coniuncta. Eadem fere atque isdem verbis  
 praetor Roscius agit cum Caesare sibi Pompeium  
 commemorasse demonstrat.

9. Quae res etsi nihil ad levandas iniurias pertinere videbantur, tamen idoneos nactus homines, per quos ea, quae vellet, ad eum perferrentur, petit ab utroque,

to which he replies, proposing terms,

5 quoniam Pompei mandata ad se detulerint, ne graventur sua quoque ad eum postulata deferre, si parvo labore magnas controversias tollere atque omnem Italiam metu liberare possint. Sibi semper primam fuisse dignitatem vitaeque potio-  
 10 se, quod populi Romani beneficium sibi per contumeliam ab inimicis extorqueretur, ereptoque semestri imperio in urbem retraheretur, cuius absentis rationem haberi proximis comitiis populus iussisset. Tamen hanc iacturam honoris sui reipublicae causa  
 15 aequo animo tulisse. Cum litteras ad senatum miserit, ut omnes ab exercitiis discederent, ne id quidem impetravisse. Tota Italia dilectus haberi, retineri legiones II, quae ab se simulatione Parthici belli sint abductae, civitatem esse in armis. Quonam  
 20 haec omnia nisi ad suam perniciem pertinere? Sed tamen ad omnia se descendere paratum atque omnia pati reipublicae causa. Proficiscatur Pompeius in suas provincias, ipsi exercitus dimittant, discedant in Italia omnes ab armis, metus e civitate tollatur,  
 25 libera comitia atque omnis respublica senatui populoque Romano permittatur. Haec quo facilius certisque condicionibus fiant et iureiurando sanciantur, aut ipse propius accedat aut se patiat accedere; fore, uti per colloquia omnes controversiae  
 30 componantur.



10. Acceptis mandatis Roscius cum L.Caesare Capuam pervenit ibique consules Pompeiumque invenit: postulata Caesaris renuntiat. Illi deliberata re respondent scriptaque ad eum mandata per eos remittunt; 5 quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias iturum. Interea, quoad fides esset data Caesarem facturum, quae polliceretur, non intermissuros consules Pom- 10 peiumque dilectus.

which Pompey and the Consuls reject.

11. Erat iniqua condicio postulare, ut Caesar Arimino excederet atque in provinciam reverteretur, ipsum et provincias et legiones alienas tenere; exercitum Caesaris velle dimitti, dilectus habere: polliceri se in 5 provinciam iturum neque, ante quem diem iturus sit, definire, ut, si peracto consulatu Caesaris non profectus esset, nulla tamen mendacii religione obstrictus videretur. Tempus vero colloquio non dare neque accessurum polliceri magnam pacis desperationem 10 afferebat. Itaque ab Arimino M. Antonium cum cohortibus quinque Arretium mittit; ipse Arimini cum duabus subsistit ibique dilectum habere instituit; Pisaurum, Fanum, Anconam singulis cohortibus occupat.

Caesar occupies some Italian towns.

15

12. Interea certior factus Iguvium Thermum praetorem cohortibus V tenere, oppidum munire omniumque esse Iguvinorum optimam erga se volun-

tatem, Curionem cum tribus cohortibus, quas Pisauri  
 5 et Arimini habebat, mittit. Cuius  
Iguvium sub- adventu cognito, diffusus municipii vo-  
mits to his luntati Thermus cohortes ex urbe re-  
officer Curio. ducit et profugit. Milites in itinere ab eo discedunt  
 ac domum revertuntur. Curio summa omnium  
 10 voluntate Iguvium recipit. Quibus rebus cognitis  
 confisus municipiorum voluntatibus Caesar cohortes  
 legionis XIII ex praesidiis deducit Auximumque pro-  
 ficiscitur; quod oppidum Attius cohortibus intro-  
 ductis tenebat dilectumque toto Piceno circummissis  
 15 senatoribus habebat.

13. Adventu Caesaris cognito decuriones Auximi  
 ad Attium Varum frequentes con-  
Auximum ex- veniunt: docent sui iudicii rem non  
pels Attius esse; neque se neque reliquos muni-  
Varus. cipes pati posse C. Caesarem imperatorem, bene de  
 republica meritum, tantis rebus gestis oppido moeni-  
 busque prohiberi; proinde habeat rationem posteri-  
 tatis et periculi sui. Quorum oratione permotus  
 Varus praesidium, quod introduxerat, ex oppido  
 10 educit ac profugit. Hunc ex primo ordine pauci  
 Caesaris consecuti milites consistere coegerunt. Com-  
 misso proelio deseritur a suis Varus; nonnulla pars  
 militum domum discedit; reliqui ad Caesarem per-  
 veniunt, atque una cum iis deprensus L. Pupius.  
 15 primi pili centurio, adducitur, qui hunc eundem  
 ordinem in exercitu Cn. Pompei antea duxerat. At  
 Caesar milites Attianos collaudat, Pupium dimittit,

Auximatibus agit gratias seque eorum facti memorem fore pollicetur.

14. Quibus rebus Romam nuntiatis tantus repente terror invasit, ut, cum Lentulus consul ad aperiendum aerarium venisset ad pecuniamque Pompeio ex senatusconsulto proferendam, protinus aperto sanctiore aerario ex urbe profugeret. Caesar enim adventare iam iamque et adesse eius equites falso nuntiabantur. Hunc Marcellus collega et plerique magistratus consecuti sunt. Cn. Pompeius pridie eius diei ex urbe profectus iter ad legiones habebat, quas a Caesare acceptas in Apulia hibernorum causa disposuerat. Dilectus circa urbem intermittuntur; nihil citra Capuam tutum esse omnibus videtur. Capuae primum sese confirmant et colligunt, dilectumque colonorum, qui lege Iulia Capuam deducti erant, habere instituunt; gladiatoresque, quos ibi Caesar in ludo habebat, ad forum productos Lentulus spe libertatis confirmat atque iis equos attribuit et se sequi iussit; quos postea monitus ab suis, quod ea res omnium iudicio reprehendebatur, circum familias conventus Campaniae custodiae causa distribuit.

15. Auximo Caesar progressus omnem agrum Picenum percurrit. Cunctae earum regionum praefecturae libentissimis animis eum recipiunt exercitumque eius omnibus rebus iuvant. Etiam Cingulo, quod oppidum Labienus constituerat suaque pecunia exaedificaverat,

Panic at Rome.  
The Consuls fly  
to Capua and  
hold levies.

Domitius makes  
a stand at Cor-  
finium,

ad eum legati veniunt quaeque imperaverit se cupidissime facturos pollicentur. Milites imperat: mittunt. Interea legio XII Caesarem consequitur. Cum  
 10 his duabus Asculum Picenum proficiscitur. Id oppidum Lentulus Spinther X cohortibus tenebat; qui Caesaris adventu cognito profugit ex oppido cohortesque secum abducere conatus magna parte militum deseritur. Relictus in itinere cum paucis incidit in  
 15 Vibullium Rufum missum a Pompeio in agrum Picenum confirmandorum hominum causa. A quo factus Vibullius certior, quae res in Piceno gererentur, milites ab eo accipit, ipsum dimittit. Item ex finitimis regionibus quas potest contrahit cohortes  
 20 ex dilectibus Pompeianis; in his Camerino fugientem Lucilium Hirrum cum sex cohortibus, quas ibi in praesidio habuerat, excipit; quibus coactis XIII efficit. Cum his ad Domitium Ahenobarbum Corfinium magnis itineribus pervenit Caesaremque adesse cum  
 25 legionibus duabus nuntiat. Domitius per se circiter XX cohortes Alba, ex Marsis et Paelignis, finitimis ab regionibus coegerat.

16. Recepto oppido expulsoque Lentulo Caesar  
 whither Caesar conquiri milites, qui ab eo discesserant,  
 laetens. dilectumque institui iubet; ipse unum  
 diem ibi rei frumentariae causa moratus Corfinium  
 5 contendit. Eo cum venisset, cohortes quinque praemissae a Domitio ex oppido pontem fluminis interrompebant, qui erat ab oppido milia passuum circiter III. Ibi cum antecursoribus Caesaris proelio commisso

celeriter Domitiani a ponte repulsi se in oppidum receperunt. Caesar legionibus traductis ad oppidum 10 constitit iuxtaque murum castra posuit.

17. Re cognita Domitius ad Pompeium in Apuliam peritos regionum magno proposito praemio cum litteris mittit, qui petant atque Domitius appeals to Pompey for help. orent, ut sibi subveniat: Caesarem duobus exercitibus et locorum angustiis facile intercludi 5 posse frumentoque prohiberi. Quod nisi fecerit, se cohortesque amplius XXX magnumque numerum senatorum atque equitum Romanorum in periculum esse venturum. Interim suos cohortatus tormenta in muris disponit certasque cuique partes ad custodiam 10 urbis attribuit; militibus in contione agros ex suis possessionibus pollicetur, quaterna in singulos iugera et pro rata parte centurionibus evocatisque.

18. Interim Caesari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio VII milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere; quae vellet, sed Caesar proceeds to invest the town. a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Paeligno prohiberi, qui id oppidum VII cohortium praesidio 5 tenebant. Mittit eo M. Antonium cum legionis XIII cohortibus quinque. Sulmonenses, simulatque signa nostra viderunt, portas aperuerunt universique, et oppidani et milites, obviam gratulantes Antonio exierunt. Lucretius et Attius de muro se deiecerunt. 10 Attius ad Antonium deductus petit, ut ad Caesarem mitteretur. Antonius cum cohortibus et Attio eodem die, quo profectus erat, revertitur. Caesar eas co-

hortes cum exercitu suo coniunxit Attiumque inco-  
 15 lumem dimisit. Caesar primis diebus castra magnis  
 operibus munire et ex finitimis municipiis frumentum  
 comportare reliquasque copias expectare instituit.  
 Eo triduo legio VIII ad eum venit cohortesque ex  
 novis Galliae dilectibus XXII equitesque ab rege  
 20 Norico circiter CCC. Quorum adventu altera castra  
 ad alteram oppidi partem ponit: his castris Curionem  
 praefecit. Reliquis diebus oppidum vallo castellisque  
 circumvenire instituit. Cuius operis maxima parte  
 effecta eodem fere tempore missi ad Pompeium re-  
 25 vertuntur.

19. Litteris perlectis Domitius dissimulans in con-  
 silio pronuntiat Pompeium celeriter sub-  
 sidio venturum hortaturque eos, ne ani-  
 mo deficient quaeque usui ad defen-  
 5 dendum oppidum sint parent. Ipse areano cum  
 paucis familiaribus suis colloquitur consiliumque  
 fugae capere constituit. Cum vultus Domitii cum  
 oratione non consentiret atque omnia trepidantius  
 timidiusque ageret, quam superioribus diebus con-  
 10 suesset, multumque cum suis consiliandi causa se-  
 creto praeter consuetudinem colloqueretur, concilia  
 conventusque hominum fugeret, res diutius tegi dis-  
 simularique non potuit. Pompeius enim rescripserat:  
 sese rem in summum periculum deducturum non esse,  
 15 neque suo consilio aut voluntate Domitium se in oppi-  
 dum Corfinium contulisse; proinde, si qua fuisset fa-  
 cultas, ad se cum omnibus copiis veniret. Id ne fieri

Pompey refuses  
 help, and Domi-  
 tius prepares to  
 fly;

posset, obsidione atque oppidi circummunitione fiebat.

20. Divulgato Domitii consilio milites, qui erant Corfinii, primo vesperi secessionem faciunt atque ita inter se per tribunos militum centurionesque atque honestissimos sui generis colloquuntur; obsideri se a Caesare. 5 opera munitionesque prope esse perfectas; ducem suum Domitium, cuius spe atque fiducia permanserint, proiectis omnibus fugae consilium capere: debere se suae salutis rationem habere. Ab his primo Marsi dissentire incipiunt eamque oppidi 10 partem, quae munitissima videretur, occupant, tantaque inter eos dissensio existit, ut manum conserere atque armis dimicare conentur; post paulo tamen internuntiis ultro citroque missis, quae ignorabant, de L. Domitii fuga cognoscunt. Itaque omnes uno 15 consilio Domitium productum in publicum circumstant et custodiunt legatosque ex suo numero ad Caesarem mittunt: sese paratos esse portas aperire quaeque imperaverit facere et L. Domitium vivum in eius potestatem tradere. 20

21. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar etsi magni interesse arbitrabatur quam primum oppido potiri cohortesque ad se in castra traducere, ne qua aut largitionibus aut animi confirmatione aut falsis nuntiis commutatio 5 fieret voluntatis, quod saepe in bello parvis momentis magni casus intercederent, tamen veritus, ne militum

but is arrested  
by his men,  
who parley  
with Caesar.

Caesar re-  
doubles his  
vigilance.

introitu et nocturni temporis licentia oppidum diriperetur, eos, qui venerant, collaudat atque in oppidum dimittit, portas murosque adservari iubet. Ipse in iis operibus, quae facere instituerat, milites disponit non certis spatiis intermissis, ut erat superiorum dierum consuetudo, sed perpetuis vigiliis stationibusque, ut contingant inter se atque omnem munionem expleant; tribunos militum et praefectos circummittit atque hortatur, non solum ab eruptionibus caveant, sed etiam singulorum hominum occultos exitus adservent. Neque vero tam remisso ac languido animo quisquam omnium fuit, qui ea nocte conquireverit. Tanta erat summae rerum expectatio, ut alius in aliam partem mente atque animo traheretur, quid ipsis Corfiniensibus, quid Domitio, quid Lentulo, quid reliquis accideret, qui quosque eventus exciperent.

22. Quarta vigilia circiter Lentulus Spinther de muro cum vigiliis custodibusque nostris colloquitur: velle, si sibi fiat potestas, Caesarem convenire. Facta potestate ex oppido mittitur, neque ab eo prius Domitiani milites discedunt, quam in conspectum Caesaris deducatur. Cum eo de salute sua agit: orat atque obsecrat, ut sibi parcat, veteremque amicitiam commemorat Caesarisque in se beneficia exponit: quae erant maxima: quod per eum in collegium pontificum venerat, quod provinciam Hispaniam ex praetura habuerat, quod in petitione

Lentulus Spinther goes to him at night, and is pardoned,



consulatus erat sublevatus. Cuius orationem Caesar interpellat : se non maleficii causa ex provincia egressum, sed uti se a contumeliis inimicorum 15 defenderet, ut tribunos plebis in ea re ex civitate expulsos in suam dignitatem restitueret, ut se et populum Romanum factione paucorum oppressum in libertatem vindicaret. Cuius oratione confirmatus Lentulus, ut in oppidum reverti liceat, petit : quod 20 de sua salute impetraverit, fore etiam reliquis ad suam spem solatio ; adeo esse perterritos nonnullos, ut suae vitae durius consulere cogantur. Facta potestate discedit.

23. Caesar, ubi luxit, omnes senatores senatorumque liberos, tribunos militum equitesque Romanos ad se produci iubet. with Domitius and all the notables there. The soldiers are drafted into Caesar's army. Erant quinque ordinis senatorii, L. Domitius, P. Lentulus Spinther, L. Caecilius Rufus, Sex. Quinctilius Varus quaestor, L. Rubrius ; praeterea filius Domitii alique complures adulescentes et magnus numerus equitum Romanorum et decurionum, quos ex municipiis Domitius evocaverat. Hos omnes productos a 10 contumeliis militum conviciisque prohibet ; pauca apud eos loquitur, quod sibi a parte eorum gratia relata non sit pro suis in eos maximis beneficiis ; dimittit omnes incolumes. HS. LX, quod advexerat Domitius atque in publico deposuerat, allatum ad 15 se a quattuorviris Corfiniensibus Domitio reddit, ne continentior in vita hominum quam in pecunia

fuisse videatur, etsi eam pecuniam publicam esse constabat datamque a Pompeio in stipendium.  
 20 Milites Domitianos sacramentum apud se dicere iubet atque eo die castra movet iustumque iter conficit VII omnino dies ad Corfinium commoratus et per fines Marrucinorum, Frentanorum, Larinatium in Apuliam pervenit.

24. Pompeius his rebus cognitis, quae erant ad  
 Pompey goes to  
 Brundisium, Corfinium gestae, Luceria proficiscitur  
 Canusium atque inde Brundisium.  
 Copias undique omnes ex novis dilectibus ad se  
 5 cogi iubet; servos, pastores armat atque iis equos attribuit; ex his circiter CCC equites conficit. L. Manlius praetor Alba cum cohortibus sex profugit, Rutilius Lupus praetor Tarracina cum tribus; quae procul equitatum Caesaris conspicatae, cui praeerat  
 10 Vibius Curius, relicto praetore signa ad Curium transferunt atque ad eum transeunt. Item reliquis itineribus nonnullae cohortes in agmen Caesaris, aliae in equites incidunt. Reducitur ad eum deprensus ex itinere N. Magius Cremona, praefectus  
 15 fabrum Cn. Pompei. Quem Caesar ad eum remittit cum mandatis: quoniam ad id tempus facultas colloquendi non fuerit, atque ipse Brundisium sit venturus, interesse reipublicae et communis salutis, se cum Pompeio colloqui; neque vero idem profici,  
 20 longo itineris spatio cum per alios condiciones ferantur, ac si coram de omnibus condicionibus disceptetur.

25. His datis mandatis Brundisium cum legionibus VI pervenit, veteranis III et reliquis, quas ex novo dilectu confecerat atque in itinere compleverat; Domitianas enim cohortes protinus a Corfinio in Siciliam miserat. Repperit consules Dyrrhachium profectos cum magna parte exercitus, Pompeium remanere Brundisii cum cohortibus viginti; neque certum inveniri poterat, obtinendine Brundisii causa ibi remansisset, quo facilius omne Hadriaticum mare extremis Italiae partibus regionibusque Graeciae in potestate haberet atque ex utraque parte bellum administrare posset, an inopia navium ibi restitisset; veritusque, ne ille Italiam dimittendam non existimaret, exitus administrationesque Brundisini portus impedire instituit. Quorum operum haec erat ratio. Qua fauces erant angustissimae portus, moles atque aggerem ab utraque parte litoris iaciebat, quod his locis erat vadosum mare. Longius progressus, cum agger altiore aqua contineri non posset, rates duplices quoqueversus pedum XXX e regione molis collocabat. Has quaternis ancoris ex III angulis destinabat, ne fluctibus moverentur. His perfectis collocatisque alias deinceps pari magnitudine rates iungebat. Has terra atque aggere integebat, ne aditus atque incursus defendendum impediretur; a fronte atque ab utroque latere cratibus ac pluteis protegebat; in quarta quaque earum turres binorum tabulatorum excitabat, quo commodius ab impetu navium incendiisque defenderet.

followed by  
Caesar, who begins to block the  
harbour.

26. Contra haec Pompeius naves magnas onerarias, quas in portu Brundisino deprehenderat, adornabat. Ibi turres cum ternis tabulatis erigebat easque multis tormentis et omni genere telorum completas ad opera Caesaris appellebat, ut rates perumperet atque opera disturbaret. Sic cotidie utrimque eminus fundis, sagittis reliquisque telis pugnabatur. Atque haec Caesar ita administrabat, ut condiciones pacis dimittas non existimaret; ac tametsi magnopere admirabatur, Magium, quem ad Pompeium cum mandatis miserat, ad se non remitti, atque ea res saepe temptata etsi impetus eius consiliaque tardabat, tamen omnibus rebus in eo perseverandum putabat.

15 Itaque Caninium Rebilum legatum, familiarem necessariumque Scribonii Libonis, mittit ad eum colloquii causa. Mandat, ut Libonem de concilianda pace hortetur; imprimis, ut ipse cum Pompeio colloqueretur, postulat: magnopere sese confidere demonstrat,

20 si eius rei sit potestas facta, fore, ut aequis condicionibus ab armis discedatur; cuius rei magnam partem laudis atque existimationis ad Libonem perventuram, si illo auctore atque agente ab armis sit discessum. Libo a colloquio Caninii digressus ad

25 Pompeium proficiscitur. Paulo post renuntiat, quod consules absint, sine illis non posse agi de compositione. Ita saepius rem frustra temptatam Caesar aliquando dimittendam sibi iudicat et de bello agendum.

Pompey makes counter works, and Caesar renews offers of peace.

27. Prope dimidia parte operis a Caesare effecta diebusque in ea re consumptis VIII naves a consulibus Dyrrhaehio remissae, Pompey provides against a surprise, quae priorem partem exercitus eo deportaverant, Brundisium revertuntur. Pompeius, sive 5 operibus Caesaris permotus sive etiam quod ab initio Italia excedere constituerat, adventu navium profectionem parare incipit et, quo facilius impetum Caesaris tardaret, ne sub ipsa profectione milites oppidum irrumperent, portas obstruit, vias plateasque inaedificat, fossas transversas viis praedueit 10 atque ibi sudes stipitesque praeacutos defigit. Haec levibus cratibus terraque inaequat; aditus autem atque itinera duo, quae extra murum ad portum ferebant, maximis defixis trabibus atque iis praeacutis 15 praesepit. His paratis rebus milites silentio naves conscendere iubet, expeditos autem ex evocatis, sagittariis funditoribusque raros in muro turribusque disponit. Hos certo signo revocare constituit, cum omnes milites naves conscendissent, atque iis expedito 20 loco actuaria navigia relinquit.

28. Brundisini Pompeianorum militum iniuriis atque ipsius Pompei contumeliis permoti Caesaris rebus favebant. and embarks his troops secretly, Itaque cognita Pompei profectione concursantibus illis atque in ea re occupatis vulgo ex tectis significabant. Per quos 5 re cognita Caesar scalas parari militesque armari iubet, ne quam rei gerendae facultatem dimittat. Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit. Qui erant in

muro custodiae causa collocati, eo signo, quod con-  
 10 venerat, revocantur notisque itineribus ad naves  
 decurrunt. Milites positis scalis muros ascendunt,  
 sed moniti a Brundisinis, ut vallum caecum fossasque  
 caveant, sustinent et longo itinere ab his circumducti  
 ad portum perveniunt duasque naves cum militibus,  
 15 quae ad moles Caesaris adhaeserant, scaphis lincibusque  
 reprehendunt, reprehensas excipiunt.

29. Caesar, etsi ad spem conficiendi negotii  
 maxime probabat coactis navibus mare  
 leaving Caesar without means of pursuit. transire et Pompeium sequi, priusquam  
 ille sese transmarinis auxiliis con-  
 5 firmaret, tamen eius rei moram temporisque longin-  
 quitatem timebat, quod omnibus coactis navibus  
 Pompeius praesentem facultatem insequendi sui ad-  
 merat. Relinquebatur, ut ex longinquiorebus region-  
 ibus Galliae Picaenique et a freto naves essent ex-  
 10 spectandae. Id propter anni tempus longum atque  
 impeditum videbatur. Interea veterem exercitum,  
 duas Hispanias confirmari, quarum erat altera  
 maximis beneficiis Pompei devincta, auxilia, equi-  
 tatum parari, Galliam Italiamque temptari se  
 15 absente nolebat.

30. Itaque in praesentia Pompei sequendi ratio-  
 nem omittit, in Hispaniam proficisci  
 Caesar sends Curio to Sicily, which Cato abandons. constituit: duumviris municipiorum  
 omnium imperat, ut naves conquirant  
 5 Brundisiumque deducendas curent. Mittit in Sar-  
 diniam cum legione una Valerium legatum, in

Siciliam Curionem pro praetore cum legionibus duabus; eundem, cum Siciliam recepisset, protinus in Africam traducere exercitum iubet. Sardiniam obtinebat M. Cotta, Siciliam M. Cato, Africam sorte 10 Tubero obtinere debebat. Caralitani, simul ad se Valerium mitti audierunt, nondum profecto ex Italia sua sponte Cottam ex oppido eiciunt. Ille perterritus, quod omnem provinciam consentire intellegebat, ex Sardinia in Africam profugit. Cato 15 in Sicilia naves longas veteres reficiebat, novas civitatibus imperabat. Haec magno studio agebat. In Lucanis Bruttiisque per legatos suos civium Romanorum dilectus habebat, equitum peditumque certum numerum a civitatibus Siciliae exigebat. 20 Quibus rebus paene perfectis adventu Curionis cognito queritur in contione sese proiectum ac proditum a Cn. Pompeio, qui omnibus rebus imparatissimus non necessarium bellum suscepisset et ab se reliquisque in senatu interrogatus omnia sibi esse 25 ad bellum apta ac parata confirmavisset. Haec in contione questus ex provincia fugit.

31. Nacti vacuas ab imperiis Sardiniam Valerius, Curio Siciliam cum exercitibus eo perveniunt. Tubero, cum in Africam Varus the Pompeian seizes Africa. venisset, invenit in provincia cum imperio Attium Varum; qui ad Auximum, ut supra 5 demonstravimus, amissis cohortibus protinus ex fuga in Africam pervenerat atque eam sua sponte vacuam occupaverat dilectuque habito duas legiones effecerat,

hominum et locorum notitia et usu eius provinciae  
 10 nactus aditus ad ea conanda, quod paucis ante annis  
 ex praetura eam provinciam obtinuerat. Hic venien-  
 tem Uticam navibus Tuberonem portu atque oppido  
 prohibet neque affectum valetudine filium exponere in  
 terra patitur, sed sublatis ancoris excedere eo loco cogit.

32. His rebus confectis Caesar, ut reliquum tem-  
 pus a labore intermitteretur, milites in  
 proxima municipia deducit; ipse ad  
 urbem proficiscitur. Coacto senatu  
 5 iniurias inimicorum commemorat. Docet se nullum  
 extraordinarium honorem appetisse, sed expectato  
 legitimo tempore consulatus eo fuisse contentum,  
 quod omnibus civibus pateret. Latum ab X tribunis  
 plebis contradicentibus inimicis, Catone vero acerrime  
 10 repugnante et pristina consuetudine dicendi mora dies  
 extrahente, ut sui ratio absentis haberetur, ipso con-  
 sule Pompeio; qui si improbasset, cur ferri passus  
 esset? si probasset, cur se uti populi beneficio pro-  
 hibuisset? Patientiam proponit suam, cum de ex-  
 15 ercibus dimittendis ultro postulavisset; in quo  
 iacturam dignitatis atque honoris ipse facturus esset.  
 Acerbitatem inimicorum docet, qui, quod ab altero  
postularent, in se recusarent atque omnia permisceri  
mallent, quam imperium exercitusque dimittere. In-  
 20 iuriam in eripiendis legionibus praedicat, crudelitatem  
 et insolentiam in circumscribendis tribunis plebis;  
 condiciones a se latas, expetita colloquia et denegata  
 commemorat. Pro quibus rebus hortatur ac postulat,

Caesar urges the  
 Senate to treat  
 with Pompey,



ut rempublicam suscipiant atque una secum adminis-  
 trent. Sin timore defugiant, illis se oneri non <sup>25</sup>  
 futurum et per se rempublicam administraturum.  
 Legatos ad Pompeium de compositione mitti oportere,  
 neque se reformidare, quod in senatu Pompeius paulo  
 ante dixisset, ad quos legati mitterentur, his auctori-  
 tatem attribui timoremque eorum, qui mitterent, signifi- <sup>30</sup>  
 cari. Tenuis atque infirmi haec animi videri. Se  
 vero, ut operibus anteire studuerit, sic iustitia et  
 aequitate velle superare.

33. Probat rem senatus de mittendis legatis ;  
 sed, qui mitterentur, non reperiiebantur,  
 maximeque timoris causa pro se quisque <sup>but failing in  
 this returns to  
 Further Gaul.</sup>  
 id munus legationis recusabat. Pom-  
 peius enim discedens ab urbe in senatu dixerat, 5  
 eodem se habiturum loco, qui Romae remansissent  
 et qui in castris Caesaris fuissent. Sic triduum dis-  
 putationibus excusationibusque extrahitur. Subicitur  
 etiam L. Metellus, tribunus plebis, ab inimicis  
 Caesaris, qui hanc rem distrahat reliquasque res, <sup>10</sup>  
 quascumque agere instituerit, impediat. Cuius cog-  
 nito consilio Caesar frustra diebus aliquot consumptis,  
 ne reliquum tempus dimittat, infectis iis, quae agere  
 destinaverat, ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriorem  
 Galliam pervenit. <sup>15</sup>

34. Quo cum venisset, cognoscit missum a Pom-  
 peio Vibullium Rufum, quem paucis <sup>Marselles closes  
 its gates to him,</sup>  
 ante diebus Corfinio captum ipse dimit-  
 serat ; profectum item Domitium ad occupandam

5 Massiliam navibus actuariis septem, quas Igilii et in  
 Cosano a privatis coactas servis, libertis, colonis suis  
 compleverat; praemissos etiam legatos Massilienses  
 domum, nobiles adulescentes, quos ab urbe discedens  
 Pompeius erat adhortatus, ne nova Caesaris officia  
 10 veterum suorum beneficiorum in eos memoriam ex-  
 pellerent. Quibus mandatis acceptis Massilienses  
 portas Caesari clauseram; Albicos, barbaros homines,  
 qui in eorum fide antiquitus erant montesque supra  
 Massiliam incolebant, ad se vocaverant; frumentum  
 15 ex finitimis regionibus atque omnibus castellis in  
 urbem convexerant; armorum officinas in urbe insti-  
 tuerant; muros, portas, classem reficiebant.

35. Evocat ad se Caesar Massilia quindecim  
 primos. Cum his agit, ne initium in-  
 ferendi belli ab Massiliensibus oriatur;  
 and on his re-  
 monstrance pro-  
 fesses neutral-  
 ity, debere eos Italiae totius auctoritatem  
 5 sequi potius, quam unius hominis voluntati obtem-  
 perare. Reliqua, quae ad eorum sanandas mentes  
 pertinere arbitrabatur, commemorat. Cuius orationem  
 legati domum referunt atque ex auctoritate haec  
 Caesari renuntiant: Intellegere se divisum esse  
 10 populum Romanum in partes duas. Neque sui  
 iudicii neque suarum esse virium discernere, utra  
 pars iustiore[m] habeat causam. Principes vero esse  
 earum partium Cn. Pompeium et C. Caesarem,  
 patronos civitatis; quorum alter agros Volcarum  
 15 Arecomicorum et Helviorum publice iis concesserit,  
 alter bello victos Sallyas attribuerit vectigaliaque

auxerit. Quare paribus eorum beneficiis parem se quoque voluntatem tribuere debere et neutrum eorum contra alterum iuvare aut urbe aut portibus recipere.

36. Haec dum inter eos aguntur, Domitius navibus Massiliam pervenit atque ab iis but receives his enemy Domitius at once. Caesar lays siege to it, receptus urbi praeficitur: summa ei belli administrandi permittitur. Eius imperio classem quoqueversus dimittunt: onerarias 5 naves, quas ubique possunt, deprehendunt atque in portum deducunt, parum clavis aut materia atque armamentis instructis ad reliquas armandas reficiendasque utuntur; frumenti quod inventum est in publicum conferunt; reliquas merces commeatusque 10 ad obsidionem urbis, si accidat, reservant. Quibus iniuriis permotus Caesar legiones tres Massiliam adducit; turres vineasque ad oppugnationem urbis agere, naves longas Arelate numero duodecim facere instituit. Quibus effectis armatisque diebus XXX, 15 a qua die materia caesa est, adductisque Massiliam, iis D. Brutum praeficit; C. Trebonium legatum ad oppugnationem Massiliae relinquit.

37. Dum haec parat atque administrat, C. Fabium legatum cum legionibus tribus, quas having previously sent on Fabius to secure passes of the Pyrenees. Narbone circumque ea loca hiemandi causa disposuerat, in Hispaniam praemittit celeriterque saltus Pyrenacos occupari iubet, 5 qui eo tempore ab L. Afranio legato praesidiis tenebantur. Reliquas legiones, quae longius hiabant, subsequi iubet. Fabius, ut erat imperatum,

adhibita celeritate praesidium ex saltu deiecit  
 10 magnisque itineribus ad exercitum Afranii contendit.

38. Adventu L. Vibullii Rufi, quem a Pompeio

Spain is held  
 for Pompey by  
 Afranius, Pe-  
 treius and Varro;  
 the two former  
 join at Herda.

missum in Hispaniam demonstratum est,  
 Afranius et Petreius et Varro, legati  
 Pompei, quorum unus Hispaniam citer-  
 5 iorem tribus legionibus, alter ulteriorem

a saltu Castulonensi ad Anam duabus legionibus,  
 tertius ab Ana Vettonum agrum Lusitaniamque pari  
 numero legionum obtinebat, officia inter se partiuntur,  
 uti Petreius ex Lusitania per Vettones cum omnibus  
 10 copiis ad Afranium proficiscatur, Varro cum iis, quas  
 habebat, legionibus omnem ulteriorem Hispaniam  
 tueatur. His rebus constitutis equites auxiliaque  
 toti Lusitaniae a Petreio, Celtiberiae, Cantabris  
 barbarisque omnibus, qui ad Oceanum pertinent,  
 15 ab Afranio imperantur. Quibus coactis celeriter  
 Petreius per Vettones ad Afranium pervenit con-  
 stituuntque communi consilio bellum ad Herdam  
 propter ipsius loci opportunitatem gerere.

39. Erant, ut supra demonstratum est, legiones

Comparative  
 strength of the  
 armies.

Afranii tres, Petrei duae, praeterea  
 scutatae citerioris provinciae et cetratae  
 5 ulterioris Hispaniae cohortes circiter

LXXX equitumque utriusque provinciae circiter V  
 milia. Caesar legiones in Hispaniam praemisera  
 VI, auxilia peditum ... milia, equitum III milia, quae  
 omnibus superioribus bellis habuerat, et parem ex  
 Gallia numerum, quam ipse pacaverat, nominatim

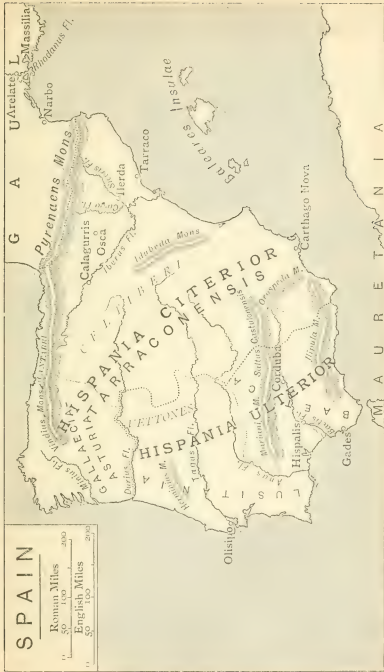
# SPAIN

Roman Miles

50 100 200

English Miles

50 100 200





ex omnibus civitatibus nobilissimo quoque evocato, 10  
huc optimi generis hominum ex Aquitanis montan-  
 isque, qui Galliam provinciam attingunt. Audierat  
 Pompeium per Mauretanium cum legionibus iter in  
 Hispaniam facere confestimque esse venturum.  
 Simul a tribunis militum centurionibusque mutuas 15  
 pecunias sumpsit; has exercitui distribuit. Quo  
 facto duas res consecutus est, quod pignore animos  
 centurionum devinxit et largitione militum voluntates  
 redemit.

40. Fabius finitimarum civitatum animos litteris  
 nuntiisque temptabat. In Sicori flumine  
 pontes effecerat duos distantes inter se Fabius nearly  
loses two legions  
by the breaking  
of a bridge.  
 milia passuum quattuor. His pontibus  
 pabulatum mittebat, quod ea, quae citra flumen 5  
 fuerant, superioribus diebus consumpserat. Hoc  
 idem fere atque eadem de causa Pompeiani exer-  
 citus duces faciebant, crebroque inter se equestribus  
 proeliis contendebant. Huc cum cotidiana consue-  
 tudine egressis pabulatoribus praesidio propiore ponte 10  
 legiones Fabianae duae flumen transissent impedi-  
 mentaque et omnis equitatus sequeretur, subito vi-  
 ventorum et aquae magnitudine pons est interruptus  
 et reliqua multitudo equitum interclusa. Quo  
 cognito a Petreio et Afranio ex aggere atque crati- 15  
 bus, quae flumine ferebantur, celeriter suo ponte  
 Afranius, quem oppido castrisque coniunctum habe-  
 bat, legiones III equitatumque omnem traiecit  
 duabusque Fabianis occurrit legionibus. Cuius ad-

20 ventu nuntiato L. Plancus, qui legionibus praeerat, necessaria re coactus locum capit superiorem diversamque aciem in duas partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset. Ita congressus impari numero magnos impetus legionum equitatus-  
 25 que sustinet. Commisso ab equitibus proelio signa legionum duarum procul ab utrisque conspiciuntur, quas C. Fabius ulteriore ponte subsidio nostris miserat suspicatus fore id, quod accidit, ut duces adversariorum occasione et beneficio fortunae ad nostros  
 30 opprimendos uterentur. Quarum adventu proelium dirimitur ac suas uterque legiones reducit in castra.

41. Eo biduo Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC, quos  
 Caesar joins him, sibi praesidio reliquerat, in castra per-  
 and advances up venit. Pons, qui fuerat tempestate  
 to the enemy's position, interruptus, paene erat reffectus: hunc  
 5 noctu perfici iussit. Ipse cognita locorum natura ponti castrisque praesidio sex cohortes relinquit atque omnia impedimenta et postero die omnibus copiis, triplici instructa acie ad Ilerdam proficiscitur et sub castris Afranii consistit et ibi paulisper sub armis  
 10 moratus facit aequo loco pugnandi potestatem. Potestate facta Afranius copias educit et in medio colle sub castris constituit. Caesar ubi cognovit per Afranium stare, quominus proelio dimicaretur, ab infimis radicibus montis intermissis circiter passi-  
 15 bus CCCC castra facere constituit et, ne in opere faciendo milites repentino hostium incursu exterrerentur atque opere prohiberentur, vallo muniri



vetuit, quod eminere et procul videri necesse erat, sed a fronte contra hostem pedum quindecim fossam fieri iussit. Prima et secunda acies in armis, ut ab 20 initio constituta erat, permanebat; post has opus in occulto a tertia acie fiebat. Sic omne prius est perfectum, quam intellegeretur ab Afranio castra muniri. Sub vesperum Caesar intra hanc fossam legiones reducit atque ibi sub armis proxima nocte conquiescit. 25

42. Postero die omnem exercitum intra fossam continet et, quod longius erat agger where he fortifies a camp. petendus, in praesentia similem rationem operis instituit singulaque latera castrorum singulis attribuit legionibus munienda fossasque 5 ad eandem magnitudinem perfici iubet; reliquas legiones in armis expeditas contra hostem constituit. Afranius Petreiusque terrendi causa atque operis impediendi copias suas ad infimas montis radices producunt et proelio laecessunt; neque ideirco 10 Caesar opus intermittit, confisus praesidio legionum trium et munitione fossae. Illi non diu commorati nec longius ab infimo colle progressi copias in castra reducunt. Tertio die Caesar vallo castra communit; reliquas cohortes, quas in superioribus castris 15 reliquerat, impedimenta que ad se traduci iubet.

43. Erat inter oppidum Ilerdam et proximum collem, ubi castra Petreius atque Afranius habebant, planitia circiter passuum CCC Skirmish for the possession of a hill. atque in hoc fere medio spatio tumulus erat paulo editior; quem si occupavisset Caesar et 5

communisset, ab oppido et ponte et commeatu omni, quem in oppidum contulerant, se interclusurum adversarios confidebat. Hoc sperans legiones tres ex castris educit acieque in locis idoneis  
 10 instructa unius legionis antesignanos procurrere atque eum tumulum occupare iubet. Qua re cognita celeriter quae in statione pro castris erant Afranii cohortes breviori itinere ad eundem occupandum locum mittuntur. Contenditur proelio  
 15 et, quod prius in tumulum Afraniani venerant, nostri repelluntur atque aliis submissis subsidiis terga vertere seque ad signa legionum recipere coguntur.

44. Genus erat pugnae militum illorum, ut

Caesar's troops  
 are confused by  
 the enemy's tactics,

magno impetu primo procurrere, audacter locum caperent, ordines suos non magnopere servarent, rari dispersique  
 5 pugnarent; si premerentur, pedem referre et loco excedere non turpe existimarent, cum Lusitanis reliquisque barbaris barbaro genere quodam pugnae assuefacti; quod fere fit, quibus quisque in locis miles inveteraverit, ut multum earum regionum  
 10 consuetudine moveatur. Haec tum ratio nostros perturbavit insuetos huius generis pugnae; circumiri enim sese ab aperto latere procurrentibus singulis arbitrabantur; ipsi autem suos ordines servare neque ab signis discedere neque sine gravi causa  
 15 eum locum, quem ceperant, dimitti censuerant oportere. Itaque perturbatis antesignanis legio,

quae in eo cornu constiterat, locum non tenuit atque in proximum collem sese recepit.

45. Caesar paene omni acie perterrita, quod praeter opinionem consuetudinemque acciderat, cohortatus suos legionem <sup>and get into a difficult position,</sup> nonam subsidio ducit; hostem insolenter atque acriter nostros insequentem suppressit 5 rursusque terga vertere seque ad oppidum Ilerdam recipere et sub muro consistere cogit. Sed nonae legionis milites elati studio, dum sarcire acceptum detrimentum volunt, temere insecuti longius fugientes, in locum iniquum progrediuntur et sub montem, 10 in quo erat oppidum positum Ilerda, succedunt. Hinc se recipere cum vellunt, rursus illi ex loco superiore nostros premebant. Praeruptus locus erat, utraque ex parte derectus ac tantum in latitudinem patebat, ut tres instructae cohortes eum locum 15 explerent, ut neque subsidia ab lateribus submitti neque equites laborantibus usui esse possent. Ab oppido autem declivis locus leni fastigio vergebat in longitudinem passuum circiter cccc. Hac nostris erat receptus, quod eo incitati studio 20 inconsultius processerant; hoc pugnabatur loco et propter angustias iniquo et quod sub ipsis radicibus montis constiterant, ut nullum frustra telum in eos mitteretur. Tamen virtute et patientia nitebantur atque omnia vulnera sustinebant. Augeban- 25 tur illis copiae, atque ex castris cohortes per oppidum crebro submittebantur, ut integri defessis

succederent. Hoc idem Caesar facere cogebatur, ut submissis in eundem locum cohortibus defessos  
 30 reciperet.

46. Hoc cum esset modo pugnatum continenter  
 from which they force their way with the help of the cavalry. horis quinque nostrique gravius a multitudi-  
 tudine premerentur, consumptis omnibus telis, gladiis dstrictis impetum  
 5 adversus montem in cohortes faciunt paucisque deiectis reliquos sese convertere cogunt. Submotis sub murum cohortibus ac nonnulla parte propter terrorem in oppidum compulsis facilis est nostris receptus datus. Equitatus autem ab utroque latere,  
 10 etsi deiectis atque inferioribus locis constiterat, tamen summa in iugum virtute conititur atque inter duas acies perequitans commodiorem ac tutiorem nostris receptum dat. Ita vario certamine pugnatum est. Nostri in primo congressu circiter  
 15 LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius ex primo hastato legionis XIII, qui propter eximiam virtutem ex inferioribus ordinibus in eum locum pervenerat; vulnerantur amplius DC. Ex Afranianis interficiuntur T. Caecilius, primi pili centurio,  
 20 et praeter eum centuriones III, milites amplius CC.

47. Sed haec eius diei praefertur opinio, ut se  
 Both sides claim the advantage. utrique superiores discessisse existimarent: Afraniani, quod, cum esse omnium iudicio inferiores viderentur, comminus tam  
 5 diu stetissent et nostrorum impetum sustinuissent et ab initio locum tumulumque tenuissent, quae causa

pugnandi fuerat, et nostros primo congressu terga  
 vertere coegissent; nostri autem, quod iniquo loco  
 atque impari congressi numero quinque horis proelium  
 sustinuissent, quod montem gladiis destrectis ascend- 10  
 issent, quod ex loco superiore terga vertere adver-  
 sarios coegissent atque in oppidum compulissent.  
 Illi cum tumulum, pro quo pugnatum est, magnis  
 operibus muniverunt praesidiumque ibi posuerunt.

48. Accidit etiam repentinum incommodum biduo,  
 quo haec gesta sunt. Tanta enim tem-  
 pestas cooritur, ut numquam illis locis  
 maiores aquas fuisse constaret. Tum  
 autem ex omnibus montibus nives pro-  
 luit ac summas ripas fluminis superavit pontesque 5  
 ambo, quos C. Fabius fecerat, uno die interrupit.  
 Quae res magnas difficultates exercitui Caesaris  
 attulit. Castra enim, ut supra demonstratum est,  
 cum essent inter flumina duo, Sicorim et Cingam, 10  
 spatio milium XXX, neutrum horum transiri poterat,  
 necessarioque omnes his angustiis continebantur.  
 Neque civitates, quae ad Caesaris amicitiam accesser-  
 ant, frumentum supportare, neque ii, qui pabulatum  
 longius progressi erant, interclusi fluminibus reverti, 15  
 neque maximi commeatus, qui ex Italia Galliaque  
 veniebant, in castra pervenire poterant. Tempus erat  
 autem difficillimum, quo neque frumenta in acervis  
 erant neque multum a maturitate aberant; et civi-  
 tates exinanitae, quod Afranius paene omne frumen- 20  
 tum ante Caesaris adventum Ilerdam convexerat,

Caesar's bridges  
 are carried  
 away; his army  
 suffers from  
 want.

5

10

15

20

reliqui si quid fuerat, Caesar superioribus diebus consumpserat: pecora, quod secundum poterat esse inopiae subsidium, propter bellum finitimae civitates  
 25 longius removerant. Qui erant pabulandi aut frumentandi causa progressi, hos levis armaturae Lusitani peritique earum regionum cetrati citerioris Hispaniae consectabantur; quibus erat proclive tranare flumen, quod consuetudo eorum omnium est, ut sine utribus  
 30 ad exercitum non eant.

49. At exercitus Afranii omnium rerum abundabat  
 Afranius is well supplied. copia. Multum erat frumentum provisum et convectum superioribus temporibus, multum ex omni provincia comportabatur;  
 5 magna copia pabuli suppetebat. Harum omnium rerum facultates sine ullo periculo pons Ilerdae praebebat et loca trans flumen integra, quo omnino Caesar adire non poterat.

50. Hae permanserunt aquae dies complures.  
 Caesar cannot rebuild the bridges. Conatus est Caesar reficere pontes; sed nec magnitudo fluminis permittebat neque ad ripam dispositae cohortes  
 5 adversariorum perfici patiebantur; quod illis prohibere erat facile cum ipsius fluminis natura atque aquae magnitudine, tum quod ex totis ripis in unum atque angustum locum tela iaciebantur; atque erat difficile eodem tempore rapidissimo flumine opera  
 10 perficere et tela vitare.

51. Nuntiatur Afranio magnos commeatus, qui iter habeant ad Caesarem, ad flumen constitisse.

Venerant eo sagittarii ex Rutenis, equites ex Gallia cum multis carris magnisque impedimentis, ut fert Gallica consuetudo. Erant praeterea cuiusque generis hominum milia circiter VI cum servis liberisque; sed nullus ordo, nullum imperium certum, cum suo quisque consilio uteretur atque omnes sine timore iter facerent usi superiorum temporum atque itinerum licentia. Erant complures honesti adulescentes, senatorum filii et ordinis equestris: erant legationes civitatum; erant legati Caesaris. Hos omnes flumina continebant. Ad hos opprimendos cum omni equitatu tribusque legionibus Afranius de nocte proficiscitur imprudentesque ante missis equitibus aggreditur. Celeriter sese tamen Galli equites expediunt proeliumque committunt. Ii, dum pari certamine res geri potuit, magnum hostium numerum pauci sustinuerunt; sed, ubi signa legionum appropinquare coeperunt, paucis amissis sese in proximos montes conferunt. Hoc pugnae tempus magnum attulit nostris ad salutem momentum; nacti enim spatium se in loca superiora receperunt. Desiderati sunt eo die sagittarii circiter CC, equites pauci, calonum atque impedimentorum non magnus numerus.

52. His tamen omnibus annona crevit; quae fere res non solum inopia praesenti, sed etiam futuri temporis timore ingravescere consuevit. Iamque ad denarios L in singulos modios annona pervenerat, et militum

5  
His convoys are detained, and attacked by Afranius.

10

15

20

25

Famine in Caesar's camp; his measures of relief.

5

vires inopia frumenti deminuerat, atque incommoda in dies augebantur; ita paucis diebus magna erat rerum facta commutatio ac se fortuna inclinaverat, ut nostri magna inopia necessariorum rerum conflictar-  
 10 entur, illi omnibus abundarent rebus superioresque haberentur. Caesar iis civitatibus, quae ad eius amicitiam accesserant, quod minor erat frumenti copia, pecus imperabat; calones ad longinquiores civitates dimittebat; ipse praesentem inopiam quibus  
 15 poterat subsidiis tutabatur.

53. Haec Afranius Petreiusque et eorum amici

Sensation at  
 Rome.

pleniora etiam atque uberiora Romam ad suos perscribebant. Multa rumor

gingebat, ut paene bellum confectum videretur.

5 Quibus litteris nuntiisque Romam perlatis magni domum concursus ad Afranium magnaque gratulationes fiebant; multi ex Italia ad Cn. Pompeium proficiscebantur, alii, ut principes talem nuntium attulisse, alii, ne eventum belli expectasse aut ex  
 10 omnibus novissimi venisse viderentur.

54. Cum in his angustiis res esset, atque omnes

Caesar crosses  
 the river, builds  
 a bridge, and  
 secures the con-  
 voys.

viae ab Afranianis militibus equiti-

busque obsiderentur, nec pontes perfici

possent, imperat militibus Caesar, ut

naves faciant, cuius generis eum superi-

5 oribus annis usus Britanniae docuerat. Carinae ac

prima statumina ex levi materia fiebant; reliquum

corpus navium viminibus contextum coriis intege-

batur. Has perfectas carris iunctis devehit noctu



milia passuum a castris XXII militesque his navibus <sup>10</sup>  
 flumen transportat continentemque ripae collem im-  
 proviso occupat. Hunc celeriter, priusquam ab  
 adversariis sentiat, communit. Huc legionem  
 postea traicit atque ex utraque parte pontem in-  
 stitutum biduo perficit. Ita commeatus et qui <sup>15</sup>  
 frumenti causa processerant tuto ad se recipit et rem  
 frumentariam expedire incipit.

55. Eodem die equitum magnam partem flumen  
 traicit. Qui inopinantes pabulatores et <sup>Successes of his</sup>  
 sine ullo dissipatos timore aggressi per- <sup>cavalry.</sup>  
 magnum numerum iumentorum atque hominum in-  
 tercipiunt, cohortibusque cetratis subsidio missis <sup>5</sup>  
 scienter in duas partes sese distribuunt, alii ut  
 praedae praesidio sint, alii ut venientibus resistent  
 atque eos propellant, unamque cohortem, quae teme-  
 re ante ceteras extra aciem procurrerat, seclusam ab  
 reliquis circumveniunt atque interficiunt incolumes- <sup>10</sup>  
 que cum magna praeda eodem ponte in castra  
 revertuntur.

56. Dum haec ad Ilerdam geruntur, Massilienses  
 usi L. Domitii consilio naves longas ex-  
 pediunt numero XVII, quarum erant XI <sup>Naval prepara-</sup>  
 tectae. Multa huc minora navigia <sup>tions of the Mar-</sup>  
 addunt, ut ipsa multitudine nostra classis terreatur. <sup>5</sup>  
 Magnum numerum sagittariorum, magnum Albi-  
corum, de quibus supra demonstratum est, imponunt  
 atque hos praemiis pollicitationibusque incitant.  
 Certas sibi deposcit naves Domitius atque has colonis

10 pastoribusque, quos secum adduxerat, complet. Sic omnibus rebus instructa classe magna fiducia ad nostras naves procedunt, quibus praecerat D. Brutus. Hae ad insulam, quae est contra Massiliam, stationes obtinebant.

57. Erat multo inferior numero navium Brutus; and of Caesar's  
admiral Brutus,  
close engage-  
ment, sed electos ex omnibus legionibus fortissimos viros, antesignanos, centuriones, Caesar ei classi attribuerat, qui sibi id muneris depoposcerant. Hi manus ferreas atque harpagones paraverant magnoque numero pilorum, tragularum reliquorumque telorum se instruxerant. Ita cognito hostium adventu suas naves ex portu educunt, cum Massiliensibus configunt. Pugnatum 10 est utrimque fortissime atque acerrime; neque multum Albici nostris virtute cedebant, homines asperi et montani et exercitati in armis; atque hi modo digressi a Massiliensibus recentem eorum pollicitationem animis continebant, pastoresque Domitii 15 spe libertatis excitati sub oculis domini suam probare operam studebant.

58. Ipsi Massilienses et celeritate navium et and victory of  
Brutus. scientia gubernatorum confisi nostros eludebant impetusque eorum non excipiebant et, quoad licebat latiore uti spatio, producta 5 longius acie circumvenire nostros aut pluribus navibus adoriri singulas aut remos transcurrentes detergere, si possent, contendebant; cum propius erat necessario ventum, ab scientia gubernatorum atque

artificiis ad virtutem montanorum confugiebant. Nostri cum minus exercitatis remigibus minusque 10 peritis gubernatoribus utebantur, qui repente ex onerariis navibus erant producti neque dum etiam vocabulis armentorum cognitis, tum etiam tarditate et gravitate navium impediabantur; factae enim subito ex humida materia non eundem usum 15 celeritatis habebant. Itaque, dum locus comminus pugnandi daretur, aequo animo singulas binis navibus obiciebant atque iniecta manu ferrea et retenta utraque nave diversi pugnabant atque in hostium naves transcendebant et magno numero Albicorum 20 et pastorum interfecto partem navium deprimunt, nonnullas cum hominibus capiunt, reliquas in portum compellunt. Eo die naves Massiliensium cum iis, quae sunt captae, intereunt VIII.

59. Hoc primum Caesari ad Ilerdam nuntiatur: simul perfecto ponte celeriter fortuna mutatur. Illi perterriti virtute equitum 21 minus libere, minus audacter vagabantur: alias non longo a castris progressi spatio, ut 5 celerem receptum haberent, angustius pabulabantur, alias longiore circuitu custodias stationesque equitum vitabant, aut aliquo accepto detrimento aut procul equitatu viso ex medio itinere proiectis sarcinis fugiebant. Postremo et plures intermittere dies et 10 praeter consuetudinem omnium noctu constituerant pabulari.

Position at Ilerda. Caesar's cavalry hampers the enemy.

60. Interim Oscenses et Calagurritani, qui erant

cum Oscensibus contributi, mittunt ad eum legatos

Many Spanish seseque imperata facturos pollicentur.

tribes join him. Hos Tarraconenses et Iacetani et Ause-

5 tani et paucis post diebus Illurgavonenses, qui flumen  
 Iiberum attingunt, insequuntur. Petit ab his omni-  
 bus, ut se frumento iuvent. Pollicentur atque  
 omnibus undique conquisitis iumentis in castra  
 deportant. Transit etiam cohors Illurgavonensis  
 10 ad eum cognito civitatis consilio et signa ex statione  
 transfert. Magna celeriter commutatio rerum. Per-  
 fecto ponte, magnis quinque civitatibus ad amicitiam  
 adiunctis, expedita re frumentaria, extinctis rumo-  
 ribus de auxiliis legionum, quae cum Pompeio per  
 15 Mauretanium venire dicebantur, multae longin-  
 quiores civitates ab Afranio desciscunt et Caesaris  
 amicitiam sequuntur.

61. Quibus rebus perterritis animis adversariorum

He begins mak-  
 ing a ford.  
 Afranius plans  
 retreat into  
 5 Celtiberia.

Caesar, ne semper magno circuitu per

pontem equitatus esset mittendus, nactus

idoneum locum, fossas pedum XXX in

5 latitudinem complures facere instituit,

quibus partem aliquam Sicoris averteret vadumque in

eo flumine efficeret. His paene effectis magnum in

timorem Afranius Petreiusque perveniunt, ne omnino

frumento pabuloque intercluderentur, quod multum

10 Caesar equitatu valebat. Itaque constituunt ipsi locis

iis excedere et in Celtiberiam bellum transferre.

Huic consilio suffragabatur etiam illa res, quod ex

duobus contrariis generibus, quae superiore bello cum

Sertorio steterant civitates, victae nomen atque imperium absentis Pompei timebant, quae in amicitia 15 manserant, magnis affectae beneficiis eum diligebant; Caesaris autem erat in barbaris nomen obscurius. Hic magnos equitatus magnaue auxilia exspectabant et suis locis bellum in hiemem ducere cogitabant. Hoc inito consilio toto flumine Hiberno naves con- 20 quirere et Octogesam adduci iubent. Id erat oppidum positum ad Hiberum miliaque passuum a castris aberat xxx. Ad eum locum fluminis navibus iunctis pontem imperant fieri legionesque duas flumen Sicorim traducunt; castra muniuntur 25 vallo pedum xii.

62. Qua re per exploratores cognita, summo labore militum Caesar continuato diem noctemque opere in flumine avertendo huc The ford available for cavalry. iam reduxerat rem, ut equites, etsi difficulter atque aegre fiebat, possent tamen atque auderent flumen 5 transire, pedites vero tantummodo humeris ac summo pectore exstarent et cum altitudine aquae tum etiam rapiditate fluminis ad transeundum impedirentur. Sed tamen eodem fere tempore pons in Hiberno prope effectus nuntiabatur et in Sicori vadum reperiebatur. 10

63. Iam vero eo magis illi maturandum iter existimabant. Itaque duabus auxiliariis cohortibus Ilerdae praesidio relictis omnibus copiis Sicorim trans- The enemy cross the Segre and march for the Ebro, eunt et cum duabus legionibus, quas superioribus 5 diebus traduxerant, castra coniungunt. Relinquebatur

Caesari nihil, nisi uti equitatu agmen adversariorum male haberet et carperet. Pons enim ipsius magnum circuitum habebat, ut multo breviori itinere illi ad  
 10 Hiberum pervenire possent. Equites ab eo missi flumen transeunt et, cum de tertia vigilia Petreius atque Afranius castra movissent, repente sese ad novissimum agmen ostendunt et magna multitudine circumfusa morari atque iter impedire incipiunt.

64. Prima luce ex superioribus locis, quae Caesaris  
 castris erant coniuncta, cernebatur  
 pursued by Caesar's horse. equitatus nostri proelio novissimos  
 His legions volunteer to illorum preni vehementer ac nonnum-  
 ford the river, quam sustinere extremum agmen atque  
 5 interrumpi, alias inferri signa et universarum cohortium impetu nostros propelli, dein rursus conversos insequi. Totis vero castris milites circulari et dolere hostem ex manibus dimitti, bellum necessario longius  
 10 duci; centurionesque tribunosque militum adire atque obsecrare, ut per eos Caesar certior fieret, ne labori suo neu periculo parceret: paratos esse sese, posse et audere ea transire flumen, qua traductus esset equitatus. Quorum studio et vocibus excitatus Caesar,  
 15 etsi timebat tantae magnitudini fluminis exercitum obicere, conandum tamen atque experiendum iudicat. Itaque infirmiores milites ex omnibus centuriis deligi iubet, quorum aut animus aut vires videbantur sustinere non posse. Hos cum legione una praesidio  
 20 castris relinquit; reliquas legiones expeditas educit magnoque numero iumentorum in flumine supra

atque infra constituto traducit exercitum. Pauci ex his militibus ablati flumine ab equitatu excipiuntur ac sublevantur; interit tamen nemo. Traducto incolumi exercitu copias instruit triplicemque aciem ducere 25 incipit. Ac tantum fuit in militibus studii, ut milium sex ad iter addito circuitu magnaue fluminis mora interposita eos, qui de tertia vigilia exissent, ante horam diei nonam consequerentur.

65. Quos ubi Afranius procul visos cum Petreio conspexit, nova re perterritus locis superioribus consistit aciemque instruit. overtake the enemy, and encamp near them. Caesar in campis exercitum reficit, ne defessum proelio obiciat; rursus conantes progredi 5 insequitur et moratur. Illi necessario maturius, quam constituerant, castra ponunt. Suberant enim montes atque a milibus passuum quinque itinera difficilia atque angusta excipiebant. Hos montes intrare cupiebant, ut equitatum effugerent Caesaris praesidiisque 10 in angustiis collocatis exercitum itinere prohiberent, ipsi sine periculo ac timore Hiberum copias traducerent. Quod fuit illis conandum atque omni ratione efficiendum; sed totius diei pugna atque itineris labore defessi rem in posterum diem distulerunt. 15 Caesar quoque in proximo colle castra ponit.

66. Media circiter nocte iis, qui aquandi causa longius a castris processerant, ab equitibus correptis, fit ab his certior Caesar, Afranius is foiled in an attempt to retire by night, duces adversariorum silentio copias castris educere. Quo cognito signum dari iubet et vasa 5

militari more conclamari. Illi exaudito clamore veriti, ne noctu impediti sub onere confluere cogerentur aut ne ab equitatu Caesaris in angustiis teneantur, iter supprimunt copiasque in castris continent.

10 Postero die Petreius cum paucis equitibus occulte ad exploranda loca proficiscitur. Hoc idem fit ex castris Caesaris : mittitur L. Decidius Saxa cum paucis, qui loci naturam perspiciat. Uterque idem suis renuntiat : quinque milia passuum proxima intercedere

15 itineris campestris, inde excipere loca aspera et montuosa ; qui prior has angustias occupaverit, ab hoc hostem prohiberi nihil esse negotii.

67. Disputatur in consilio a Petreio atque Afranio et tempus profectionis quaeritur. Plerique censebant, ut noctu iter facerent : posse prius ad angustias veniri, quam sentiretur.

5 Alii, quod pridie noctu conclamatum esset in Caesaris castris, argumenti sumebant loco non posse clam exiri. Circumfundi noctu equitatum Caesaris atque omnia loca atque itinera obsidere ; nocturnaque proelia esse vitanda, quod perterritus miles in civili

10 dissensione timori magis quam religioni consulere consuerit. At luce multum posse pudorem omnium oculis, metum etiam tribunorum militum et centurionum praesentiam afferre ; quibus rebus coerceri milites et in officio contineri soleant. Quare omni

15 ratione esse interdium perrumpendum : etsi aliquo accepto detrimento, tamen summa exercitus salva locum, quem petant, capi posse. Haec vincit in



consilio sententia, et prima luce postridie constituunt proficisci.

68. Caesar exploratis regionibus albente caelo omnes copias castris educit magnoque circuitu nullo certo itinere exercitum ducit. Nam quae itinera ad Hiberum atque Octogesam pertinebant, castris hostium oppositis tenebantur. Ipsi erant transcendendae valles maximae ac difficillimae, saxa multis locis praerupta iter impediabant, ut arma per manus necessario traderentur militesque inermes sublevatique alii ab aliis magnam partem itineris conficerent. Sed hunc laborem recusabat nemo, quod eum omnium laborum finem fore existimabant, si hostem Hiberno intercludere et frumento prohibere potuissent.

69. Ac primo Afraniani milites visendi causa laeti ex castris procurrebant contumeliosisque vocibus prosequerentur nostros: necessarii victus inopia coactos fugere atque ad Ilerdam reverti. Erat enim iter a proposito diversum, contrariamque in partem iri videbatur. Duces vero eorum consilium suum laudibus efferebant, quod se castris tenuissent; multumque eorum opinionem adiuvabat, quod sine iumentis impedimentisque ab Ilerda profectos videbant, ut non posse inopiam diutius sustinere confiderent. Sed, ubi paulatim retorqueri agmen ad dextram conspexerunt iamque primos superare regionem castrorum animum adverterunt, nemo erat adeo tardus aut

Caesar manœuvres to secure a defile leading to the Ebro.

The enemy hurry towards the same point.

15 fugiens laboris, quin statim castris exeundum atque occurrendum putaret. Conclamatur ad arma, atque omnes copiae paucis praesidio relictis cohortibus exeunt rectoque ad Hiberum itinere contendunt.

70. Erat in celeritate omne positum certamen,

Caesar arrives first, and defeats an attempt to secure another route.

utri prius angustias montesque occuparent: sed exercitum Caesaris viarum difficultates tardabant, Afranii copias equitatus Caesaris insequens morabatur.

5 Res tamen ab Afranianis huc erat necessario deducta, ut, si priores montes, quos petebant, attigissent, ipsi periculum vitarent, impedimenta

totius exercitus cohortesque in castris relictas  
10 servare non possent; quibus interclusis exercitu Caesaris auxilium ferri nulla ratione poterat. Confecit prior iter Caesar atque ex magnis rupibus nactus planitiem in hac contra hostem aciem instruit. Afranius, cum ab equitatu novissimum

15 agmen premeretur, ante se hostem videret, collem quendam nactus ibi constitit. Ex eo loco IIII cetratorum cohortes in montem, qui erat in conspectu omnium excelsissimus, mittit. Hunc

20 magno cursu concitatos iubet occupare, eo consilio, uti ipse eodem omnibus copiis contenderet et mutato itinere iugis Octogesam perveniret. Hunc cum obliquo itinere cetrati peterent, conspicatus equitatus Caesaris in cohortes impetum facit: nec minimam partem temporis equitum vim cetrati

sustinere potuerunt omnesque ab iis circumventi 25  
in conspectu utriusque exercitus interficiuntur.

71. Erat occasio bene gerendae rei. Neque vero  
idem Caesarem fugiebat, tanto sub  
oculis accepto detrimento perterritum He is urged to  
crush the enemy  
at once,  
exercitum sustinere non posse, praesertim  
circumdatum undique equitatu, cum in loco 5  
aequo atque aperto confligeretur: idque ex omnibus  
partibus ab eo flagitabatur. Concurrebant legati,  
centuriones tribunisque militum: Ne dubitaret  
proelium committere. Omnium esse militum para-  
tissimos animos. Afranianos contra multis rebus 10  
sui timoris signa misisse: quod suis non subvenis-  
sent, quod de colle non decederent, quod vix  
equitum incursus sustinerent collatisque in unum  
locum signis conferti neque ordines neque signa  
servarent. Quod si iniquitatem loci timeret, datum 15  
iri tamen aequo loco pugnandi facultatem, quod  
certe inde decedendum esset Afranio nec sine aqua  
permanere posset.

72. Caesar in eam spem venerat, se sine pugna  
et sine vulnere suorum rem conficere  
posse, quod re frumentaria adversarios but refuses and  
allows them to  
retire.  
interclusisset. Cur etiam secundo  
proelio aliquos ex suis amitteret? cur vulnerari 5  
pateretur optime meritos de se milites? cur  
denique fortunam periclitaretur? praesertim cum  
non minus esset imperatoris consilio superare quam  
gladio. Movebatur etiam misericordia civium, quos

10 interficiendos videbat: quibus salvis atque incolumibus rem obtinere malebat. Hoc consilium Caesaris plerisque non probabatur; milites vero palam inter se loquebantur, quoniam talis occasio victoriae dimitteretur, etiam cum vellet Caesar, sese non  
 15 esse pugnatuos. Ille in sua sententia perseverat et paulum ex eo loco degreditur, ut timorem adversariis minuat. Petreius atque Afranius oblata facultate in castra sese referunt. Caesar praesidiis in montibus dispositis omni ad Hiberum intercluso  
 20 itinere quam proxime potest hostium castris castra communit.

73. Postero die duces adversariorum perturbati,

While Afranius and Petreius are constructing a stockade,

quod omnem rei frumentariae fluminisque Hiberi spem dimiserant, de reliquis rebus consultabant. Erat unum iter,

5 Ilerdam si reverti vellent; alterum, si Tarraconem peterent. Haec consiliantibus iis nuntiantur aquatores ab equitatu premi nostro. Qua re cognita crebras stationes disponunt equitum et cohortium alariarum legionariasque intericiunt co-  
 10 hortas vallumque ex castris ad aquam ducere incipiunt, ut intra munitionem et sine timore et sine stationibus aquari possent. Id opus inter se Petreius atque Afranius partiuntur ipsique perficiendi operis causa longius progrediuntur.

74. Quorum discessu liberam nacti milites colloquiorum facultatem vulgo procedunt, et quem quisque in castris notum aut municipem habebat con-

quirit atque evocat. Primum agunt gratias omnes  
 omnibus, quod sibi perterritis pridie  
 pepercissent: eorum se beneficio vivere. their men  
mingle with  
Caesar's, and are  
parleying with  
him 5  
 Deinde imperatoris fidem quaerunt, rec-  
 tene se illi sint commissuri, et quod non  
 ab initio fecerint armaque cum hominibus necessariis  
 et consanguineis contulerint queruntur. His provo- 10  
 cati sermonibus fidem ab imperatore de Petrei atque  
 Afranii vita petunt, ne quod in se scelus concepisse  
 neu suos prodidisse videantur. Quibus confirmatis  
 rebus se statim signa translaturus confirmant, lega-  
 tosque de pace primorum ordinum centuriones ad 15  
 Caesarem mittunt. Interim alii suos in castra  
 invitandi causa adducunt, alii ab suis abducuntur,  
 adeo ut una castra iam facta ex binis viderentur;  
 compluresque tribuni militum et centuriones ad  
 Caesarem veniunt seque ei commendant. Idem hoc 20  
 fit a principibus Hispaniae, quos illi evocaverant et  
 secum in castris habebant obsidum loco. Hi suos  
 notos hospitesque quaerebant, per quem quisque  
 eorum aditum commendationis haberet ad Caesarem.  
 Afranii etiam filius adulescens de sua ac parentis sui 25  
 salute cum Caesare per Sulpicium legatum agebat.  
 Erant plena laetitia et gratulatione omnia et eorum,  
 qui tanta pericula vitasse, et eorum, qui sine  
 vulnere tantas res confecisse videbantur, magnum-  
 que fructum suae pristinae lenitatis omnium iudicio 30  
 Caesar ferebat, consiliumque eius a cunctis pro-  
 babatur.

75. Quibus rebus nuntiatis Afranio, ab instituto opere discedit seque in castra recipit, sic when the generals return. Petreius drives off Caesar's men, paratus, ut videbatur, ut, quicumque accideret casus, hunc quieto et aequo animo 5 ferret. Petreius vero non deserit sese. Armata familiam: cum hac et praetoria cohorte cetratorum barbarisque equitibus paucis, beneficiariis suis, quos suae custodiae causa habere consuerat, improvise ad vallum advolat, colloquia militum interrumpit, nostros 10 repellit a castris, quos deprendit, interficit. Reliqui coeunt inter se et repentino periculo exterriti sinistras sagis involvunt gladiosque destringunt atque ita se a cetratis equitibusque defendunt castrorum propinquitate confisi seque in castra recipiunt et ab 15 iis cohortibus, quae erant in statione ad portas, defenduntur.

76. Quibus rebus confectis flens Petreius manipulos circumit militesque appellat: ne and forces his troops to swear not to parley. se ne Pompeium, imperatorem suum, adversariis ad supplicium tradant, obse- 5 erat. Fit celeriter concursus in praetorium. Postulat, ut iurent omnes se exercitum ducesque non deserturos neque prodituros neque sibi separatim a reliquis consilium capturos. Princeps in haec verba iurat ipse; idem iusiurandum adigit Afranium; 10 subsequuntur tribuni militum centurionesque; centuriatim producti milites idem iurant. Edicunt, penes quem quisque sit Caesaris miles, ut producat: productos palam in praetorio interficiunt. Sed ple-

rosque ii, qui receperant, celant noctuque per vallum  
emittunt. Sic terrore oblato a ducibus crudelitas 15  
in supplicio, nova religio iurisiurandi spem praesentis  
deditionis sustulit mentesque militum convertit et  
rem ad pristinam belli rationem redegit.

77. Caesar milites adversariorum, qui in castra  
per tempus colloquii venerant, summa Caesar sends  
back the Pom-  
peians in his  
camp. diligentia conquiri et remitti iubet. Sed  
ex numero tribunorum militum cen-  
turionumque nonnulli sua voluntate apud eum re 5  
manserunt. Quos ille postea magno in honore  
habuit; centuriones in priores ordines, equites  
Romanos in tribunicium restituit honorem.

78. Premebantur Afraniani pabulatione, aqua-  
bantur aegre. Frumenti copiam legion- The enemy suf-  
fer from famine,  
and set out for  
Ilerda,arii nonnullam habebant, quod dierum  
VII ab Ilerda frumentum iussi erant  
efferre, cetrati auxiliaresque nullam, quorum erant 5  
et facultates ad parandum exiguae et corpora insueta  
ad onera portanda. Itaque magnus eorum cotidie  
numerus ad Caesarem perfugiebat. In his erat  
angustiis res. Sed ex propositis consiliis duobus  
explicitius videbatur Ilerdam reverti, quod ibi 10  
paulum frumenti reliquerant. Ibi se reliquum con-  
silium explicaturos confidebant. Tarraco aberat  
longius; quo spatio plures rem posse casus recipere  
intellegebant. Hoc probato consilio ex castris pro-  
ficiscuntur. Caesar equitatu praemisso, qui novis- 15  
simum agmen carperet atque impediret, ipse cum

legionibus subsequitur. Nullum intercedebat tempus, quin extremi cum equitibus proeliarentur.

79. Genus erat hoc pugnae. Expeditae cohortes fighting on the way, novissimum agmen claudebant pluresque in locis campestribus subsistebant. Si mons erat ascendendus, facile ipsa loci natura periculum repellebat, quod ex locis superioribus, qui antecesserant, suos ascendentes protegebant; cum vallis aut locus declivis suberat neque ii, qui antecesserant, morantibus opem ferre poterant, equites vero ex loco superiore in aversos tela coniciebant, tum magno erat in periculo res. Relinquebatur, ut, cum eiusmodi locis esset appropinquatum, legionum signa consistere iuberent magnoque impetu equitatum repellerent, eo submoto repente incitati cursu sese in valles universi demitterent atque ita transgressi rursus in locis superioribus consisterent. Nam tantum ab equitum suorum auxilio aberant, quorum numerum habebant magnum, ut eos superioribus perterritos proeliis in medium reciperent agmen ultroque eos tuerentur; quorum nulli ex itinere excedere licebat, quin ab equitatu Caesaris exciperetur.

80. Tali dum pugnatur modo, lente atque paulatim proceditur crebroque, ut sint auxilio and manoeuvring to shake off Caesar. suis, subsistunt; ut tum accidit. Milia enim progressi III vehementiusque peragitati ab equitatu montem excelsum capiunt ibique una fronte contra hostem castra muniunt neque iumentis onera deponunt. Ubi Caesaris castra posita



tabernaculaque constituta et dimissos equites pabulandi causa animum adverterunt, sese subito proripiunt hora circiter sexta eiusdem diei et spem nacti 10 morae discessu nostrorum equitum iter facere incipiunt. Qua re animum adversa Caesar relictis impedimentis subsequitur, praesidio paucas cohortes relinquit; hora decima subsequi pabulatores equitesque revocari iubet. Celeriter equitatus ad cotidi 15 anum itineris officium revertitur. Pugnatur acriter ad novissimum agmen, adeo ut paene terga convertant, compluresque milites, etiam nonnulli centuriones, interficiuntur. Instabat agmen Caesaris atque universum imminebat. 20

81. Tum vero neque ad explorandum idoneum locum castris neque ad progrediendum data facultate consistunt necessario et They encamp at last, and he proceeds to invest them. procul ab aqua et natura iniquo loco castra ponunt. Sed isdem de causis Caesar, quae 5 supra sunt demonstratae, proelio non lacescit et eo die tabernacula statui passus non est, quo paratiores essent ad insequendum omnes, sive noctu sive interdiu erumperent. Illi animadverso vitio castrorum tota nocte munitiones proferunt castraque castris 10 convertunt. Hoc idem postero die a prima luce faciunt totumque in ea re diem consumunt. Sed quantum opere processerant et castra protulerant, tanto aberant ab aqua longius, et praesenti malo aliis malis remedia dabantur. Prima nocte aquandi causa 15 nemo egreditur ex castris; proximo die praesidio in

castris relicto universas ad aquam copias educunt, pabulatum emittitur nemo. His eos suppliciiis male haberi Caesar et necessariam subire deditionem quam  
 20 proelio decertare malebat. Conatur tamen eos vallo fossaque circummunire, ut quam maxime repentinas eorum eruptiones demoretur; quo necessario descensuros existimabat. Illi et inopia pabuli adducti et, quo essent ad iter expeditiores, omnia sarcinaria  
 25 iumenta interfici iubent.

82. In his operibus consiliisque biduum consumitur; tertio die magna iam pars  
 They pretend to offer battle, operis Caesaris processerat. Illi impediendae reliquae munitionis causa hora circiter  
 5 nona signo dato legiones educunt aciemque sub castris instruunt. Caesar ab opere legiones revocat, equitatum omnem convenire iubet, aciem instruit; contra opinionem enim militum famamque omnium videri proelium defugisse magnum detrimentum afferebat. Sed isdem de causis, quae sunt  
 10 cognitae, quo minus dimicare vellet, movebatur, atque hoc etiam magis, quod spatii brevitatem etiam in fugam coniectis adversariis non multum ad summam victoria iuvare poterat. Non enim amplius pedum milibus  
 15 duobus ab castris castra distabant. Hinc duas partes acies occupabant duae: tertia vacabat ad incursum atque impetum militum relicta. Si proelium committeretur, propinquitas castrorum celerem superatis ex fuga receptum dabat. Hac de causa constituerat  
 20 signa inferentibus resistere, prior proelio non lacessere.

83. Acies erat Afraniana duplex legionum quinque, tertium in subsidiis locum alariae cohortes obtinebant; Caesaris triplex; sed only to stop Caesar's works. primam aciem quaternae cohortes ex quinque legionibus tenebant; has subsidiariae ternae et rursus aliae 5 totidem suae cuiusque legionis subsequebantur; sagittarii funditoresque media continebantur acie, equitatus latera cingebat. Tali instructa acie tenere uterque propositum videbatur: Caesar, nisi coactus proelium ne committeret; ille, ut opera Caesaris impediret. 10 Producitur tamen res, aciesque ad solis occasum continentur; inde utrique in castra discedunt. Postero die munitiones institutas Caesar parat perficere; illi vadum fluminis Sicoris temptare, si transire possent. Qua re animadversa Caesar Germanos levis armaturae 15 equitumque partem flumen traicit crebrasque in ripis custodias disponit.

84. Tandem omnibus rebus obsessi, quartum iam diem sine pabulo retentis iumentis, aquae, lignorum, frumenti inopia colloquium petunt et id, si fieri possit, They capitulate pitiful speech of Afranius. semoto a militibus loco. Ubi id a Caesare negatum 5 et, palam si colloqui vellent, concessum est, datur obsidis loco Caesari filius Afranii. Venitur in eum locum, quem Caesar delegit. Audiente utroque exercitu loquitur Afranius: Non esse aut ipsis aut militibus succensendum, quod fidem erga imperatorem 10 suum Cn. Pompeium conservare voluerint. Sed satis iam fecisse officio satisque supplicii tulisse. Perpressos

omnium rerum inopiam; nunc vero paene ut feras circummunitos prohiberi aqua, prohiberi ingressu,  
 15 neque corpore dolorem neque animo ignominiam ferre posse. Itaque se victos confiteri, orare atque obsecrare, si qui locus misericordiae relinquatur, ne ad ultimum supplicium progredi necesse habeant. Haec quam potest demississime et subiectissime  
 20 exponit.

85. Ad ea Caesar respondit: Nulli omnium has partes vel querimoniae vel miserationis minus convenisse. Reliquos enim omnes officium suum praestitisse: se, qui etiam  
 Caesar's reply; their lives and property are spared, but the army must be discharged.  
 5 bona condicione et loco et tempore aequo configere noluerit, ut quam integerrima essent ad pacem omnia; exercitum suum, qui iniuria etiam accepta suisque interfectis, quos in sua potestate habuerit, conservarit et texerit; illius  
 10 denique exercitus milites, qui per se de concilianda pace egerint, qua in re omnium suorum vitae consulendum putarint. Sic omnium ordinum partes in misericordia constitisse; ipsos duces a pace abhorruisse; eos neque colloqui neque indutiarum  
 15 iura servasse et homines imperitos et per colloquium deceptos crudelissime interfecisse. Accidisse igitur his, quod plerumque hominum nimia pertinacia atque arrogantia accidere soleat, uti eo recurrant et id cupidissime petant, quod paulo ante contemp-  
 20 serint. Neque nunc se illorum humilitate neque aliqua temporis opportunitate postulare, quibus

rebus opes augeantur suae; sed eos exercitus, quos contra se multos iam annos aluerint, velle dimitti. Neque enim sex legiones alia de causa missas in Hispaniam septimanque ibi conscriptam, neque tot 25 tantasque classes paratas, neque submissos duces rei militaris peritos. Nihil horum ad pacandas Hispanias, nihil ad usum provinciae provisum, quae propter diurnitatem pacis nullum auxilium desiderarit. Omnia haec iam pridem contra se 30 parari: in se novi generis imperia constitui, ut idem ad portas urbanis praesideat rebus et duas bellicosissimas provincias absens tot annos obtineat; in se iura magistratuum commutari, ne ex praetura et consulatu, ut semper, sed per paucos probati 35 et electi in provincias mittantur; in se aetatis excusationem nihil valere, quin superioribus bellis probati ad obtinendos exercitus evocentur; in se uno non servari, quod sit omnibus datum semper imperatoribus, ut rebus feliciter gestis aut cum 40 honore aliquo aut certe sine ignominia domum revertantur exercitumque dimittant. Quae tamen omnia et se tulisse patienter et esse laturum: neque nunc id agere, ut ab illis abductum exercitum teneat ipse, quod tamen sibi difficile non sit, sed 45 ne illi habeant, quo contra se uti possint. Proinde, ut esset dictum, provinciis excederent exercitumque dimitterent; si id sit factum, se nociturum nemini. Hanc unam atque extremam esse pacis conditionem.

86. Id vero militibus fuit pergratum et iucundum,  
 Delight of the soldiers. ut ex ipsa significatione cognosci potuit,  
 ut, qui aliquid iusti incommodi expec-  
 tavissent, ultro praemium missionis ferrent. Nam  
 5 cum de loco et de tempore eius rei controversia  
 inferretur, et voce et manibus universi ex vallo, ubi  
 constiterant, significare coeperunt, ut statim dimit-  
 terentur, neque omni interposita fide firmum esse  
 posse, si in aliud tempus differretur. Paucis cum  
 10 esset in utramque partem verbis disputatum, res  
 huc deducitur, ut ii, qui habeant domicilium aut  
 possessionem in Hispania, statim, reliqui ad Varum  
 flumen dimittantur; ne quid iis noceatur, neu quis  
 invitus sacramentum dicere cogatur, a Caesare  
 15 cavetur.

87. Caesar ex eo tempore, dum ad flumen  
 Varum veniatur, se frumentum daturum  
 Arrangements for disbanding them. pollicetur. Addit etiam, ut, quod quis-  
 que eorum in bello amiserit, quae sint  
 5 penes milites suos, iis, qui amiserant, restituatur;  
 militibus aequa facta aestimatione pecuniam pro  
 his rebus dissolvit. Quascumque postea contro-  
 versias inter se milites habuerunt, sua sponte ad  
 Caesarem in ius adierunt. Petreius atque Afranius  
 10 cum stipendium ab legionibus paene seditione facta  
 flagitarentur, cuius illi diem nondum venisse  
 dicerent, Caesar ut cognosceret, postulatum est,  
 eoque utrique, quod statuit, contenti fuerunt.  
 Parte circiter tertia exercitus eo biduo dimissa duas

legiones suas antecedere, reliquas subsequi iussit, 15  
ut non longo inter se spatio castra facerent, eique  
negotio Q. Fufium Calenum legatum praeficit. Hoc  
eius praescripto ex Hispania ad Varum flumen  
est iter factum atque ibi reliqua pars exercitus  
dimissa est.

## NOTES.

---

### ABBREVIATIONS.

**ABL.**, ablative; **abs.**, absolute; **acc.**, accusative; **cf.**, *confer*, compare; **dat.**, dative; **dep.**, dependent; **edl.**, editions; *e.g.*, *exempli gratia*, for example; *i.e.*, *id est*, that is; **infin.** infinitive; **lit.**, literally; **ms.**, manuscripts; **obj.**, objective; *or. obl.*, *oratio obliqua*; **pres.**, present; **subj.**, subjunctive; *viz.*, *videlicet*, namely; *B.G.*, Caesar De Bello Gallico; **=**, equivalent to.

### I.

1. **litteris**. This letter was conveyed by Curio (note on ch. 18, l. 21) and contained the proposal that Pompey and Caesar should both resign their provinces and dismiss their armies, and that Caesar should then go to Rome and stand for the consulship. This was on Jan. 1st, 49 B.C.

4. **ut** etc., 'that the question should be put to the Senate in accordance with' etc., *i.e.* 'that the letter should be considered by the Senate.' Only the consuls, praetors, and tribunes had the right of proposing a question to the Senate.

6. **infinite**, 'without limiting the subject of debate.'

8. **sin ... respiciant**, *lit.* 'but if they kept their eyes on Caesar,' *i.e.* would not break with him.

9. **ut ... fecerint**, 'as they had done': *id quod* might have been used for *ut*, the *subj.* being due to *oratio obliqua*.

13. **receptum**, 'a retreat' to Caesar's favour, *i.e.* 'a chance of falling back' on it.

**Scipio**. Full name, Q. Caccilius Metellus Pius Scipio, now Pompey's father-in-law.



## II.

2. **aberat.** The mss. and most edd. read *aderat*, which would mean, not 'was present' in the Senate, as he would have forfeited the *imperium* by entering the city, but 'was at hand' outside the walls. Cf. ch. 3.

4. **ut**, 'as for instance'; repeated ll. 9 and 14. M. Marcellus was a relative of the consul C. Marcellus, and friendly to Pompey.

5. **ingressus etc.**, 'adopting the following line of argument.' An explanatory clause following is often introduced by *is*, as here.

8. **quo praesidio**, 'by which protection,' *i.e.* 'under the protection of which.'

10. **censebat**, 'gave his opinion,' *i.e.* 'made a motion.' The subst. regularly used in this sense is *sententia*, l. 4, 17, 19.

11. **timere**. Note the change from 'oblique petition' to 'oblique narration.'

12. **ab eo** seems to be used for *a se* for the sake of clearness.

**ne ... videretur**. Two distinct ideas are combined here. Pompey *seemed* to be keeping the legions as a menace to Caesar, and C. *feared* he might really do so.

14. **M. (Caelius) Rufus**, one of Cicero's correspondents, who joined Caesar in order to get rid of his debts, and afterwards deserted him.

16. **convicio etc.**, 'were rebuked and violently assailed by a tirade of the consul's.'

23. **adversus etc.**, 'should be held guilty of treason.'

24. **intercedit** agrees only with the first subject, which is often the case when the verb precedes.

26. **ut quisque etc.**, '*the more* harshly ... a senator spoke, *the more* he was commended' etc.

## III.

6. **evocantur**. A different sense from that in l. 2, see Vocab. *Ordines* has three meanings—1, centuries; 2, the rank of a centurion; 3, the centurions themselves (*B.G.* 6. 7).

8. **ipsum**. '*Even* the place of assembly was crowded,' as well as the city generally.

10. *qui veteres* etc., 'who had long been at feud with Caesar.'

14. L. Piso, father of Calpurnia, Caesar's wife.

#### IV.

3. *Caesaris*, objective gen., 'his old feud *with* Caesar.' So also *dolor repulsae*, 'vexation *at* his defeat' in his recent candidature for the consulship, B.C. 51.

6. *regum* etc., 'the bribes (to be got) for conferring the title of king,' as was done years afterwards by M. Antonius. We cannot connect *regum app.* with *spe*, because *et* is not coordinate with *ac*.

7. Sullam, the famous dictator, who put Marius and his partisans to death by the Proscription.

8. *redeat*, 'is to come back,' *i.e.* 'will naturally come.' As a Cornelius, he considered himself the proper successor of Cornelius Sulla.

10. *pro necessitudine*, 'on the strength of his connexion by marriage with Pompey,' see note on ch. 1, l. 13.

11. *iudiciorum*, 'about the courts of law,' *i.e.* lest by some fresh change in their constitution the *potentes* (l. 12) should lose their predominance in them.

15. *totum*, 'wholly,' adverbial use.

17. *quorum* etc., 'with most of whom he himself had saddled Caesar during the time of the marriage connexion between them,' *i.e.* before the death of his wife Julia, Caesar's daughter.

18. *infamia* etc., 'the scandal about the two legions.' Cf. *iniuriae retentorum equitum*, B.G. 3. 10.

19. *quas* etc., 'which he had diverted from their march to Asia and Syria (the Parthian War) and employed to establish his own power' etc. *Asiae* = *Asiatico*.

#### V.

5. *extremi* etc., 'of preserving by the veto the most elementary of their rights,' *i.e.* their inviolability, as *sacro-sancti*.

7. *septimo die*, the seventh day of these proceedings which began on January 1st.

9. *tribuni*. Such as Tib. and C. Gracchus, and L. Saturninus.

*suarum actionum*, 'of their official career.'

12. *quo nisi etc.*, 'which was never resorted to before by the most daring senators, except' etc. The effect of this decree was to arm the magistrates with dictatorial power, or to proclaim martial law. The mss. and most edd. read *latorum* for *senatorum*, 'the proposers of motions.' Observe the subjective gen. *omnium* and obj. gen. *salutis* depending on the same word, *desperatione*.

17. *a. d. VII etc.*, *i.e. ante diem septimum Idus Ianuarius*, 'on the seventh of January.' See Grammar on the Roman Calendar.

19. *qua ex die*, *i.e.* from January 1st. The 'assembly days' were the 3rd and 4th.

21. *gravissime etc.*, 'the most oppressive and harsh decrees are passed.'

25. *si qua etc.*, 'in case things might be brought to a peaceable settlement by any sense of fairness on their part.'

## VI.

1. *extra urbem*. The Senate usually met in the Temple of Bellona, outside the walls, when it wished to give audience to a general with the *imperium*.

3. *agit etc.*, 'made the same declarations as he had communicated through Scipio.'

5. *legiones ... X*. He had really only two legions ready, viz., those which he had got from Caesar; the rest had been levied long before for service in Spain, but had not yet been mobilised.

6. *cognitum*, supply *esse*, 'he knew and was assured.'

9. *tota etc.* This and the three following clauses give the various motions proposed, of which only the first and third were passed.

10. Faustus Sulla was son of the Dictator, and so would have influence with Bocchus, king of Mauretania, whose father had done Sulla good service.

12. *Iuba*, King of Numidia, who owed his throne to Pompey.

13. *passurum*, supply *se* as subject.

19. *neque . deiciuntur*, 'are not included in the balloting.' The constitutional way of assigning the provinces was by casting lots among those ex-consuls and ex-praetors who had gone out of office at least five years before. Scipio and Domitius had only been four and two years respectively out of office, whereas Philippus (father of the tribune, l. 14) had been so for six years. Cotta was related to Caesar's mother, Aurelia.

22. *ad populum* etc., 'that a proposal should be made to the people for conferring the *imperium* on them' by a so-called *lex curiata*, which was a mere form.

25. *privati*, the proconsuls mentioned in ch. 5, l. 15.

## VII.

2. *omnium* etc., 'he relates all the wrongs done to him by his enemies at different times.'

7. *novum* etc., 'a novel precedent.' The *ut*-clause explains what this was.

16. *factum in* etc., 'it had been on the occasion of mischievous laws.'

17. *templis*, referring no doubt to the occupation of the Capitol by Tib. Gracchus and his friends, 133 B.C., of the Aventine by C. Gracchus and Fulvius Flaccus, 121 B.C., and of the Capitol once more by Saturninus, 100 B.C.

21. *quidem*. After this the mss. add—*nulla lex promulgata, non cum populo agi coeptum, nulla secessio facta*, clearly an interpolation, being quite out of the construction.

*hortatur* etc., 'he exhorts them to defend against his enemies the reputation and dignity of that general (himself) under whose command they had for nine years served (lit. carried on) the State most successfully, won very many victories, and subjugated the whole of Gaul and Germany.' For *rempublicam gerere*, cf. Liv. 2. 64, *in Volscis respublica egregie gesta*.

*imperatoris* is attracted into the relative clause, as is often the case when that comes first, cf. *cuius rei causa venerat*, ch. 8, l. 7 (where the antecedent clause has to be partly supplied). For the abl. *annis* cf. note on *horis quinque*, ch. 46.

26. XIII, for *tertiæ decimæ*, the ordinal num. adj.

27. *tumultus*, see Vocabulary.

28. *imperatoris*. Note the obj. gen. after *iniurias*, 'wrongs done to their general' etc. In l. 3 *inimicorum* is subjective.

## VIII.

1. *Ariminum*. To reach this town (now Rimini) from Ravenna, Caesar had to cross the small river Rubico, which separated *Gallia Cisalpina* from Italy proper. This was practically a declaration of war against the Senate, and later writers represented him as hesitating long before crossing.

7. *cujus rei* etc. There is an ellipse of *de ea re* before *cujus*, cf. note on *imperatoris*, ch. 7, l. 21.

8. *velle* etc., 'Pompey wished to clear himself before Caesar, lest he should construe what he (Pompey) had done on public grounds as an insult to himself.'

14. *reipublicæ dimittere*, 'to waive for the sake of the State.'

15. *cum ... speret*, 'when he fancied he was doing an injury to them.' Observe *spero* in this sense with *pres. infin.*

## IX.

6. *si ... possint*, 'in the hope that by taking a little trouble they might succeed in putting an end to' etc. Cf. end of ch. 5.

12. *cujus* etc., 'though the people had ordered that he should be allowed to stand (for the consulship) at the next elections without being present.' This was a quite exceptional favour granted him in the year 52 B.C. See Vocab. for *rationem habere*.

16. *ut* etc., a substantival clause expressing the demand contained in his letter.

19. *quonam* etc., 'what was the object of all this but his overthrow?' A *rhetorical* question, and therefore expressed as usual with the first and third persons, by acc. and infin., while indirect questions for information are in the subjunctive, but cf. note on *cur esset*, ch. 32.

23. *ipsi*, i.e. Pompey and himself.

28. ipse is of course Pompey, *se* is Caesar.

29. fore uti ... componantur, a common periphrasis for *compositum iri*.

## X.

1. Caesare. Of course this is L. Caesar the younger.

6. reverteretur, 'let C. return,' the jussive subj., by historical sequence for *revertatur*.

9. quoad etc., 'till a pledge was given.'

## XI.

1. erat etc., 'it was an unfair arrangement to demand that Caesar should..., while he himself held both provinces and legions belonging to others.' Either *alienas* belongs to *legiones* alone, or *provincias* refers, not to Spain, but to the other provinces over which Pompey was assuming a sort of control. Note the asyndeton (absence of copula) at *ipsum* and at *dillectus*, l. 5, marking the strong contrast.

6. neque, ante etc., 'but not to fix on what day he would go.' Compare the use of *ante* in dates—*ante diem VII. Id. Jan.*, ch. 5.

9. tempus etc., 'but his not granting time for an interview nor promising to come himself caused great despair about peace.' Observe the use of the infin. as subject of *afferebat*, and omission of *se* before *accessurum*, as in ch. 6, l. 13.

11. ab Arimino. The use of the prep. implies that Caesar's troops were not in the town, but outside the walls. Cf. *Arimino* at the beginning of the chap.

12. Arretium (now Arezzo) was an important place to secure, being on the road from Ariminum to Rome.

14. Pisaurum, Fanum, now Pesaro and Fano.

## XII.

1. Iguvium, now Gubbio.

10. recipit, 'takes possession of,' often used of accepting the voluntary submission of a place.

## XIII.

1. *decuriones*. The town council of a free town or colony was called *ordo decurionum*. *Auximum* is now Osimo.

3. *docent* etc., 'they inform him that they cannot decide this matter, but that' etc., lit. 'that the matter is not one of their own judgment.' Cf. ch. 35, *neque sui iudicii neque suarum esse virium* etc.

7. *proinde* etc., 'therefore he should consider the future.' A rare sense of *posteritas*, found also in Cic. *Fam.* 2. 18. For *proinde* in exhortation cf. end of ch. 19.

10. *ex primo ordine*, see *Introd.* ii. § 2.

15. *primi pili* etc. See *Introd.* ii. § 2.

17. *Attianos* etc., 'the soldiers of Attius.' Cf. *Domitiani*, ch. 16; *Pompeiani*, ch. 28, *Afraniani*, ch. 69 etc.

## XIV.

5. *sanctiore*. 'The more sacred treasury' was reserved for special emergencies such as a Gallic war.

6. *Caesar* etc., 'for it was falsely reported that Caesar was just on the point of arriving, and that his cavalry were close at hand.' The *personal* pass. construction, for which we use the impersonal.

13. *Capuam*, the chief city of Campania, some way to the S.E. of Rome.

15. *lege Iulia*, a law passed by Caesar in his consulship, B.C. 59, granting lands in Campania to 20,000 poor citizens, in spite of the opposition of the other consul Bibulus and the nobles. Many of these settlers were veterans from Pompey's armies.

16. *in ludo*, see *Vocab.* It was usual at Rome for the candidates for high offices to give shows of gladiators, wild beasts etc., in order to win popularity. The swordsmen were trained for the purpose by a fencing master (*lanista*) and kept in a *ludus gladiatorius*.

20. *reprehendebatur*, no doubt because the memory of the ravages of Spartacus in the Servile War, 20 years before, was still hateful.

*circum familias* etc., 'he distributed among the large establishments in the district of Campania to be guarded.'

## XV.

6. **Labienu**s, a *legatus* of Caesar's who had highly distinguished himself in the Gallic war, and now forsook him for Pompey. *Cingulum* was a little to the W. of *Aucimum*.

10. **Asculum**, the modern Ascoli. The epithet is added because there was a town of the same name in Apulia.

11. **Lentulus Spinther** had been consul in 57 B.C., and helped to bring about Cicero's recall from exile.

14. *incidit* etc., 'he fell in with Vib. Rufus, who had been sent by Pompey into Picenum to secure the loyalty of the people.'

20. **Camerino**, a town of Picenum, N.W. of Asculum.

23. *cum his* etc., 'with these he makes his way by forced marches to Domitius A. at Corfinium.' A most important town of the *Paeligni*, capital of the Italian Confederation in the Social War. Domitius had been chosen by the Senate to supersede Caesar in Gaul, ch. 6.

26. **Alba**, sc. *Forentina*, on the road between Corfinium and Rome.

**Marsis**. These and the *Paeligni* were hardy warlike tribes, in the hilly country east of Rome.

## XVI.

1. **oppido**. The mss. read *Firmo*, but Asculum, where Lentulus was, is clearly meant.

6. **fluminis**, the *Aternus*, now called Pescara.

## XVII.

4. **Caesarem** etc., '(to say) that Caesar's way could easily be barred by two armies and the difficulties of the country, and his corn-supply cut off.' The construction changes from oblique petition to oblique narration.

12. **quaterna** etc., 'four *ingera* apiece and for the centurions and reserve men in proportion,' i.e. twice as much, since the pay of a centurion or *evocatus* was double that of a private.

## XVIII.

1. **quod oppidum**, i.e. Sulmo, implied in *Sulmonenses*, 'the people of Sulmo.'



6. **M. Antonium.** He had been quaestor in Gaul under Caesar for two years, so was not without military experience. The fact of Caesar sending a smaller force than the garrison of the town showed his confidence in the goodwill of the latter.

7. **simulatque,** = *simulac*, for which *simul* alone is also used, as in ch. 30.

12. **mitteretur.** Historical sequence is quite usual after a historic pres., as here, but we also find primary sequence, as in ch. 20, *ut .. conentur.*

18. **eo triduo,** 'during the next three days.'

19. **rege Norico,** probably Voccio, King of Noreia, *B.G.* 1. 53.

21. **Curionem,** formerly a zealous aristocrat, now a strong supporter of Caesar. See *Introd.* i. § 7.

## XIX.

1. **dissimulans,** 'concealing his real feelings' (or 'the fact'). *Simulo* is to pretend what is *not* the case.

3. **ne** etc., 'not to be disheartened, but to prepare all that was necessary for the defence of the town.' *Ne* is not repeated with *que*, but *ut* is supplied from it.

11. **concilia.** The asyndeton here points a contrast, as the three co-ordinate clauses which precede are connected by *atque* and *que*. We should insert 'but' or 'while.' Distinguish *concilium*, 'an assembly,' from *consilium*, 'a council of war,' composed of officers, who might speak their opinions, as in ch. 67.

14. **sese** etc., 'that he would not expose his cause to the hazard of a general engagement, and that it was not by his advice or in accordance with his wishes that' etc.

17. **id ... fiebat,** 'this was being made impossible by' etc.

## XX.

6. **ducem** etc., 'their general D., out of hope and confidence in whom they had stayed there, was forming a plan of escape, leaving them all in the lurch.' *Cuius* is obj. gen.

9. **debere se,** 'so they ought.' The asyndeton forcibly introduces their conclusion.

11. *videretur*, the subj. of *virtual oratio obliqua*, when the verb of saying or thinking etc. is itself in the subj., instead of what is said or thought.

12. *ut ... conentur*, 'that they were on the point of coming to blows and settling it by force of arms.' See note on ch. 18, l. 11.

18. *sese* etc. The *or. obl.* is introduced by *legatos mittunt*.

## XXI.

4. *ne qua* etc., 'lest any change of feeling might be brought about either by bribes or encouragement or false tidings, because often in war great disasters occur through trifling occasions,' lit. 'impulses.' *Intercederent* is *or. obl.* of the *thought*.

12. *non certis* etc., 'not in parties with regular intervals between, as had been his custom on the preceding days, but in a continuous line of guards and posts, so as to be in touch with one another, and fill up the whole line of investment.' *Stationes* were whole detachments, larger than *vigiliae*.

18. *neque* etc., 'but not a man of them was so slack and spiritless as to go to sleep that night.' *Qui* introducing a consecutive clause = *ut*.

20. *tanta* etc., 'so keen was the expectation of a decisive result that the attention and emotions of all were strained in different directions as to what was happening ... and what would be the issue to each.' We should expect *excepturi essent*.

## XXII.

3. *velle*. Supply *se* as in ch. 11, *polliceri*. The *or. obl.* is introduced by *colloquitur*.

10. *quae erant* etc., 'which were in fact very great.' This *indic.* and those in the *quod*-clauses which follow show that these remarks are Caesar's own, as the words of Léntulus would be in the subj. Cf. note on *qui amiserant*, ch. 87.

11. *pontificum*. Caesar himself had been elected *pontifex maximus* when quite a young man.

12. *ex praetura*, 'after his praetorship.' Caesar had been allotted the province of Spain B.C. 59, after his consulship, but resigned it in favour of Léntulus, in order to take Gaul.

16. *in ea re*, 'while engaged in his defence.'

17. *suam*, 'their,' refers to the object, as there is no danger of ambiguity.

*ut ... vindicaret*, 'to assert his own liberty and that of the Roman people, ground down by a small faction.'

20. *quod etc.*, 'his success in getting his own life spared would be an encouragement to the rest to hope for themselves.' Note *sua* applying to Lentulus, *suam* to the rest, as the context is clear.

23. *durius consulere*, 'to form harsh designs against their life' means 'to meditate suicide.'

## XXIII.

14. **HS. lx**, *i.e. sexagies centena milia sestertium*, 'six million sesterces or about £48,000. The symbol HS. stands for IIS. (*duo et semis*) or  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses. See Grammar on Roman money.

16. **quattuorviris**. The mss. have *duumviris* (see note on 30, l. 3), but Kraner changes the reading on the authority of inscriptions.

17. *ne ... videatur*, 'that he might not seem to have shown more self-restraint in respect of men's lives than of money,' *i.e.* to have been covetous, though not cruel.

20. **sacramentum etc.**, 'to take the (military) oath in his presence,' or swear obedience to him as their new general.

21. **iustum iter**, 'a regular day's march,' about 15 miles.

23. **Larinatum**, 'the people of *Larinum*,' a large town of Samnium near the *Tifernus*. The *Frentani* were also in Samnium N.W. of *Larinum*. The chief town of the *Marrucini* was *Teate*.

## XXIV.

3. **Brundisium**, the modern Brindisi, still the most important harbour on the E. coast of Italy.

10. **signa ... transferunt**, 'come over in a body to Curius,' lit. 'carry over their standards.' Cf. *signa inferre*, 'to attack'; *signa referre*, 'to retreat'; *signa tollere*, 'to break up camp,' etc.

14. **Cremona, abl.**, 'of Cremona' (still so called, a large town of *Gallia Cisalpina*, on the R. *Padus*). Cf. 3. 71, *C. Pleginatem Placentia*, *A. Granium Puteolis*, *M. Sacrativirum Capua*.

14. *praefectus fabrum*. See *Introd. ii. § 7.*

19. *neque vero* etc., 'but that the same good was not done when terms were proposed through others at a great distance, as when all the terms were discussed face to face.'

## XXV.

2. *veteranis III.*, 'three of them veteran legions.'

4. *compleverat*, 'had filled up' by adding the cohorts taken from *Lentulus, Attius*, etc.

6. *Dyrrhachium*, a town on the E. shore of the Adriatic, anciently called *Epidamnus*. According to *Plutarch* 30 cohorts went with the consuls.

10. *remansisset*. Note the difference between this word and *restitisset*, l. 13. *Pompey* had either stayed there permanently, in order to maintain full control of the Adriatic, or had merely stopped there temporarily for want of ships. The indirect disjunctive question is regularly introduced by *-ne ... an.*

14. *veritus*. The subject is of course *Caesar*; *ille* is *Pompey*.

15. *exitus* etc., 'he began blocking up the outlets and workings of the harbour of *Brundisium*, an operation which was conducted on the following plan.'

17. *moles* etc., 'he began throwing in large stones and rubbish from the shore on either side.' *Moles atque aggerem* is usually taken as a hendiadys, 'an embanked mole,' and *molis* (sing.) in l. 21 is no doubt the 'mole.'

19. *cum agger* etc., 'as the rubbish could not be kept together where the water was deeper, he proceeded to station double rafts, measuring 30 feet each way, in a line with the mole.' *Altiore aqua* is abl. abs.; cf. *rapidissimo flumine*, ch. 50. *Quoqueversus* = *utroqueversus*.

23. *Lis*, dat. after *iungebat*.

26. *a fronte* etc., 'in front and on both sides.'

## XXVI.

1. *onerarias*. This is not merely an epithet of *navis*, or it would be coupled to *mercenas* by *que*, but *navis oneraria* is a fixed expression for 'a merchant ship,' opposed to *navis longa*, 'a man of war'; cf. *naves longas veteres*, ch. 30, l. 16.

3. *ibi* = *in his*, 'on board of these.'

8. *atque* etc., 'and yet while C. was carrying on these operations, he did not think he ought to neglect terms of peace.' Observe the limiting force of *ut* after *ita*, 'that nevertheless.'

12. *ea ... temptata*, 'his repeated efforts in this direction.'

16. *Libonis*, afterwards father-in-law of Sextus Pompeius.

19. *magnopere* etc., 'he points out that he is very confident that, if an interview is granted him, hostilities will be abandoned on fair terms.'

21. *cujus rei*, dep. on *laudis* etc., 'the credit and reputation of this achievement.'

23. *illo ... agente*, 'by his advice and agency.'

## XXVII.

9. *sub ... profectioe*, 'at the very moment of his departure.'

10. *vicos plateasque*, 'the streets and broadways.' The *viae* mentioned below were the high roads running through the town, which, being broader than the rest, could not so easily be barricaded or built across.

12. *haec ... inaequat*, 'these he levels over with light hurdles and earth,' thus concealing the trench altogether, so that troops attempting to march over would fall into it and be transfixed by the stakes.

17. *expeditos*, 'lightly equipped,' *i.e.* not encumbered by the *sarcinae* or packs, usually weighing about 45 lbs. (English). In l. 20 *expedito* is 'convenient,' 'free from obstacles.'

## XXVIII.

3. *Caesaris rebus*, 'Caesar's cause.'

8. *sub noctem*, 'at nightfall.' Cf. Horace's *sub lacrimosa Troiae funera*, 'just before.'

12. *vallum caecum*, 'the concealed row of stakes,' planted in the trenches. *Caecus*, 'blind,' sometimes means 'unseen,' just as *surdus*, 'deaf,' sometimes is 'unheard.'

16. *reprehensas excipiunt*, 'and after grappling capture them.'

## XXIX.

1. *etsi* etc., 'although as regards the prospect of bringing the war to a close he approved most of the plan of collecting ships and crossing the sea in pursuit of Pompey.'

8. *relinquebatur ut* etc., 'the only course left was to wait for ships' etc. The substantival *ut*-clause is subject to *relinquebatur*.

9. *a freto*, see Vocabulary.

14. *Galliam .. temptari*, 'that attempts should be made to secure the adhesion of Gaul' etc.

## XXX.

3. *duumviris*, the two chief magistrates of free towns, who were sometimes called *consules* or *praetores*.

5. *deducendas curent*, 'should have them brought.'

10. *sorte ... debebat*, 'had a right to hold Africa, which had been allotted to him.' Caesar's motive for securing these three provinces no doubt was that they supplied Rome with corn.

11. *Caralitani*, 'the people of Caralis,' chief town of Sardinia, on the S. coast.

*simul* here = *simulatque*, 'as soon as they heard.'

12. *profecto*, sc. *eo* or *Valerio*.

18. *Lucanis Bruttisque*, the two divisions of Italy which lay nearest to Sicily. The first was called Lucania; for the other the name of its people was regularly used.

21. *quibus ... cognito*, 'hearing of Curio's approach when these preparations were nearly completed.' The first abl. abs. is subordinate to the second.

23. *omnibus* etc., 'utterly unprepared in all respects.' The MSS. and most edd. read *imparatissimis*, an abl. abs.

## XXXI.

1. *nacti ... perveniunt*, 'Valerius and Curio finding Sardinia and Sicily respectively unoccupied by military governors make their way there with armies.' *Imperia* is used here for governors with the *imperium*.

5. *ad Auximum*, 'in the neighbourhood of A.'

10. *nactus ... obtinuerat*, 'having secured opportunities for making these efforts because a few years previously he had held that province as propraetor.'

14. *sed ... cogit*, 'but forced him to weigh anchor and leave the place.' This was the more inexcusable, as Tubero was on his own side.

## XXXII.

2. *intermitteretur*, 'might be left free'; see *Vocab.*

8. *latum*, 'a motion had been carried.' *Ferre* is usually 'to propose a motion,' *perferre* 'to carry' it.

10. *dicendi mora*, 'by talking against time.'

11. *ut sui etc.*, cf. note on 9, l. 9.

12. *cur... esset?* This and the following are *rhetorical* questions, and so might have been expressed by *acc.* and *infin.*; cf. note on 9, l. 19. In 72, l. 5, there is a special reason for the subj.

15. *ultra postulavisset*, 'he had actually made the demand,' instead of waiting for Pompey to make it. *Ultra* often has the sense of 'turning the tables,' or doing the reverse of what is expected.

18. *in se*, 'in their own case.'

20. *legionibus*, those mentioned in ch. 4.

24. *republicam etc.*, 'to undertake the task of government.'

25. *oneri*. This *dat.*, usually called *dat. of purpose or consequence*, is more simply described by Roby as *dat. of predication*, especially with *esse*.

29. *ad quos etc.*, 'that importance was attributed to those to whom envoys were sent,' *i.e.* that the mere fact of sending envoys to any one was a confession of his importance.

31. *tenuis... animi*, 'the sentiments of a weak and narrow mind.'

## XXXIII.

6. *eodem etc.*, 'that he would treat alike (lit. 'hold in the same place') those who remained at Rome and those who were in Caesar's camp.' He would treat both as outlaws.

9. *L. Metellus*, the well-known tribune who vainly attempted to hinder Caesar from helping himself to money from the treasury. Caesar is said to have taken some three and a half millions (of our money).

14. *ulteriorem Galliam*, another name for *G. Transalpina*, or Gaul beyond the Alps, corresponding roughly to modern France, since its conquest by Caesar. *Gallia Citerior* was also called *Cisalpinia*. Caesar left Rome in charge of the praetor M. Aemilius Lepidus, with the title of *praefectus urbi*.

## XXXIV.

3. *Corfinio*, taken with *dimiserat*.

5. *navibus*, abl. of accompaniment, used without *cum* when troops, ships, etc., are spoken of. Cf. 31, l. 12; 36, l. 1; and *copiis*, 41, l. 7. *Massilia*, the modern Marseilles, was originally a Greek colony from Phocæa, in Asia Minor, founded in the sixth century B. C.

Igilii. *Igilium* was a small island off the W. coast of Italy, nearly opposite *Cosa* in Etruria. *Cosanum* is 'the territory of Cosa.'

6. *colonis*, here not 'colonists,' but 'tenant-farmers.'

9. *officia*, contrasted with *beneficia*. The latter is a kindness regarded as spontaneous, *officium* often conveys the idea of a return for previous services, or a mere discharge of obligations.

13. *in ... fide*, 'under their protection.'

## XXXV.

1. *quindecim primos*, 'the fifteen presidents' of the Senate of Massilia (with 600 members).

4. *auctoritatem*, 'the lead' of all Italy. At *debere* the construction changes from oblique petition to obl. narration.

6. *ad ... mentes*, 'to bring them to a healthy frame of mind.'

8. *ex auctoritate*, 'on the resolution of the council.'

10. *sui iudicii*, see note on 13, l. 3.

14. *patronos*. Not only individual foreigners, but whole communities were often under the special protection of some distinguished Roman, who looked after their interests at Rome.

*alter ... alter* probably refer to Caesar and Pompey in reverse order, as C. had never carried on war near Marseilles, and so could not have conquered the Sallyes, a Ligurian tribe. Pompey had doubtless rewarded the Massilians for their loyalty during the war with Sertorius, who had received help from many of the Gauls.

16. *attribuerit*, 'had assigned as tributaries.'



## XXXVI.

3. *receptus*, not exactly 'received,' but 'admitted.'

*summa* etc., 'he is invested with full powers for carrying on the war.'

7. *parum ... utuntur*, 'they utilise those which were defective in their bolts or timber and sails for fitting out and repairing the rest.'

11. *quibus*. This use of the relative, which is simply co-ordinating, or equivalent to a conjunction with the demonstr. pron., must be distinguished from the true relative use in adjectival clauses. It is best translated by a demonstr. pron., with or without a conjunction. Here—'indignant at these wrongs.'

14. *naves longas*, cf. note on 26, l. 1.

*Arelâte*, (now Arles) a town on the Rhone, here abl. of place, same form as nom.

16. *a qua die*, 'from the day on which.' For the gender, cf. *ante certam diem*, ch. 2, l. 22.

## XXXVII.

1. **C. Fabium**. He had been a *legatus* of Caesar in Gaul, but is only slightly mentioned in *B. G.* 5.

3. **Narbone**, chief town in the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*.

6. **L. Afranio**. He had served under Pompey in the wars with Sertorius and Mithridates, and was consul 60 B.C.

10. *magnis itineribus*, 'by forced marches.' A *magnum iter* was 24 miles, cf. note on 23, l. 21.

## XXXVIII.

3. (**M.**) **Petreius**, celebrated as the general who really defeated Catiline, while the consul C. Antonius had the nominal command.

**Varro** (**M. Terentius**), a famous grammarian or literary critic, whose chief work, *De Lingua Latina*, is still extant.

5. *alter ... tertius*. These words, like *alter ... alter* in 35, must refer to Varro and Petreius in reverse order, as it is plain from what follows that Petreius, not Varro, held Lusitania.

6. saltu Castulonensi, 'the range of Castulo,' now the Sierra Morena, stretching from E. to W. between the *Anas* (Guadiana) and the *Baetis* (Guadalquivir).

12. equites ... imperantur, 'a requisition for auxiliary horse and foot is laid by Petreius on the whole of Lusitania, and by Afranius on Celtiberia' etc. Lusitania corresponds with Portugal, Celtiberia with Arragon; the Cantabri are the modern Asturians.

17. ad Herdam, cf. note on 31, l. 5.

### XXXIX.

3. scutatae ... cetratae. See Introd. ii. § 5.

9. nominatim ... evocato, 'specially summoning all the most famous warriors out of all the states.'

11. huc = *ad hos*, 'added to these.'

optimi generis, 'some of an excellent race of men from the Aquitani' etc. For the gen. without a noun to depend on, cf. *huc ... Thessalos ac reliquorum gentium ... adiecerat*, bk. 3, ch. 4. The expression is peculiar.

12. audierat etc. A very improbable report, as such a march along the N. coast of Africa would be far more difficult and dangerous than a voyage to Spain. The whole passage would apply better to Afranius than to Caesar, and it is thought likely that some words have been lost.

15. mutuas ... sumpsit, 'he borrowed sums of money.' But Caesar was now in no lack of money, after opening the Roman treasury.

### XL.

2. Sicori, now the Sègre.

4. his pontibus, 'by these bridges,' ablative of direction of motion.

10. egressis ... praesidio, 'in order to cover the foraging parties which had gone out.' The common reading is *egressae*, going with *legiones*.

12. subito ... interruptus, 'suddenly the bridge was broken down by the violence of the wind and the swollen state of the river.'

22. diversam ... constituit, 'formed in line with two fronts looking opposite ways,' like Joab and Abishai in 2 Sam. x. 9-10.

28. *susplicatus* etc., 'surmising that, as actually happened, the leaders of the opposite side would avail themselves of the opportunity and favour of fortune to surprise our men.' This periphrasis for *usuros esse* is not so common as that for the fut. infin. pass., cf. 9, l. 29.

## XLI.

1. *eo biduo*, 'two days after.'

7. *omnibus copiis*, cf. note on 34, l. 5.

8. *triplici ... acie*, 'in three lines,' the usual fighting formation; see *Introd. ii. § 4*.

*ad Ilerdam*. The prep. is inserted because he advanced to the neighbourhood of the town which was itself in possession of the enemy.

13. *per Afranium* etc., 'that it was due to A. that a battle did not take place.'

17. *vallo ... iussit*, 'he would not allow it to be fortified by a rampart, which must have projected and been seen from a distance, but ordered a trench 15 ft. wide to be dug in front opposite the enemy.' Such a work could be carried out secretly and the men not be exposed to fire.

22. *prius ... quam* etc., 'before it could be perceived.' The subj. expresses a *purpose* of concealment; the indic. would have only stated the *fact* that it was observed afterwards.

## XLII.

4. *singulaque* etc., 'and assigned each side of the camp to one legion to fortify.' One side was entrenched already, so three legions only would be required for this work, hence three were left to protect them as stated below, l. 11, since Caesar had altogether six legions in Spain (ch. 39).

10. *neque = non tamen*, 'but ... not.'

12. *munitione fossae*, 'the trench as a defence,' gen. of definition, cf. *praemium missionis*, ch. 86.

## XLIII.

3. *planitia ... CCC*, 'a plan about 300 paces across.'

4. *in hoc ... spatio*, 'at about the centre of this.' A common idiom for *huius*. Caesar's plan was to establish a fortified

post in the rear of Afranius's camp, so as to cut off his communications with the town.

10. *antesignanos*, see *Introd.* ii. § 4.

16. *aliis ... subsidiis*, 'further reserves being sent to their support,' i.e. to that of the enemy. For this sense of *sub* in composition, cf. *subvenio*, *succurro*, and *succedo*.

#### XLIV.

1. *ut ... procurrerent*, 'first to make a great rush forward.' These subjunctive clauses with *ut* are equivalent to infinitives.

7. *cum Lusitanis etc.*, 'being accustomed to a certain uncivilised style of fighting in their wars with the L.,' etc. The MSS. omit *barbaro*, hence in some edd. *quodam* is changed into *eodem*, but *barbaro* would certainly be omitted by a copyist after *barbaris*.

8. *quod ... moveatur*, 'because it is usual for the soldier to be greatly influenced by the practice of the regions in which he has been long established.' Cf. *B.G.*, 2. 1, *exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia*.

11. *generis* of course depends on *pugnae*, dat. after *insuetos*.

12. *ab...latere*, 'on their exposed side,' i.e. that on which they were not protected by their comrades.

14. *ab signis etc.*, usually 'to desert,' here merely 'to quit the main body.' *Neque ... neque* here simply mean 'and not ... nor.'

18. *atque ... recepit*, 'but fell back on the nearest hill'; cf. note on 74, l. 8.

#### XLV.

8. *dum ... volunt*, 'wishing to make up for' (lit. 'mend') 'the loss sustained.'

9. *longius*, 'too far.' A frequent use of the comparative.

13. *praeruptus etc.*, 'the ground was precipitous, steep on both sides, and its width was such that three cohorts in battle array filled the whole space, so that reserves could not be sent to their aid on the flanks, nor could cavalry be any help to them if hard pressed.'

18. *leni ... vergebat*, 'sloped gently down.'

24. *virtute et patientia*, 'with courage and endurance.' The abl. of manner is usually accompanied by an epithet;

otherwise *cum* is prefixed by the best prose writers; cf. note on 46, l. 11. Here possibly the expression may be explained as a kind of hendiadys = *forti patientia*.

29. *ut ... reciperet*, 'to withdraw the exhausted men by sending fresh cohorts to the same spot.'

## XLVI.

2. *horis quinque*. This abl. of duration occurs again in 47, l. 9, so also *novem annis* 7, l. 22.

3. *consumptis* etc., 'having exhausted all their javelins they drew their swords and charged up the hill against the cohorts.' Note the two abl. abs., the latter of which is best translated as co-ordinate with the principal verb. For *adversus montem* a frequent construction is *adverso monte*.

8. *compulsis*, agreeing with *nonnulla parte* by the *constructio ad sensum*. Some take *non. parte* adverbially = 'partly,' making *compulsis* agree with *cohortibus*.

11. *summa*. The MSS. and most edd. read *summum* agreeing with *iugum*, so that *virtute* would stand alone, as in ch. 45.

14. *nostri* etc., 'about seventy of our men.'

15. *primo hastato*, 'the first century of *hastati* of the first cohort'; see Introd. ii. § 2.

18. *amplius DC*. The numeral is *sexcenti*, since *amplius* does not usually take abl., even without *quam*.

## XLVII.

1. *sed haec* etc., 'but the opinion expressed about that day is that both sides thought they had got the best of it.' The *ut*-clause is epexegetical or explanatory of *haec opinio*.

5. *stetissent*. The subj. is used in the causal clauses because they are in *or. obl.*, expressing the soldiers' view.

6. *ab initio*. The MSS. omit *ab*, but the point is that they had not only taken the hill 'at first,' but held it 'from the first.'

*quae ... fuerat*. We might expect *fuisse*, because of the *or. obl.*, but the clause is merely adjectival and defines *locum* etc., so that the subj. is not required. *Quae* agrees with *causa* by the common attraction of the relative and other pronouns to the gender of the predicate or complement. Cf. *pecora quod* etc., 48, l. 23.

## XLVIII.

1. **biduo, quo** etc., 'two days after this occurrence.'

5. **proluit**, subject, *tempestas*.

11. **spatio** etc., 'within a space of thirty miles,' *i.e.* between the two rivers. The *Cinga* is now the *Cinea*.

12. **angustiis**, the abl. without *in* is common after *contineri*.

18. **quo neque** etc., 'when the corn was not yet cut and piled in heaps, nor yet far from maturity,' *i.e.* had grown too tall and strong to be used as fodder. The mss. have *in hibernis*, which is altered in most edd. to *in herbis*.

22. **reliqui** etc., 'and whatever had been left' (asyndeton). *Reliqui* is the usual gen. after partitive words.

23. **quod secundum** etc., 'which might have been a second resource against famine,' when there was no corn; cf. note on 47, l. 6. The imperf. of *possum, debeo*, etc., and periphrases with the gerund are regularly in the indic. where we should expect subj.

29. **utribus**, to be used as buoys or swimming belts; cf. Liv. 21. 27. This substantival *ut*-clause is subject to *est*.

## XLIX.

6. **facultates**, 'opportunities for procuring.'

## L.

6. **cum ... tum**, 'not only ... but also.'

9. **rapidissimo flumine**, abl. abs., 'owing to the great rapidity of the stream,' cf. *altiore aqua*, ch. 25.

## LI.

2. **habeant**. The subj. implies that this is part of the message. Some edd. read *habebant*, which makes it simply a historical fact, cf. *quae fuerat*, 47, l. 6.

4. **ut fert** etc., 'according to the prevailing custom in Gaul,' lit., 'as Gallic custom leads.' The *Ruteni* were a Celtic tribe, occupying the district now called Rouergne.

7. **nullus ordo**, sc. *erat*.

9. **usi ... licentia**, 'with the same lack of discipline as in former times and on former journeys' (or 'marches'). Note the *general* sense of *utor*.

10. *erant ... erant ... erant*. This repetition (epanaphora) conveys the idea of enumerating all the various elements of this convoy. Cf. *multum ... multum* in 49, l. 2.

13. *flumina*, 'the floods' (like *aquæ* in ch. 48) since *ad flumen* above shows that the Sègre alone was the obstacle.

18. *dum ... potuit*, 'as long as the conflict could be kept up with a foe like themselves,' i.e. with cavalry alone. In this sense *dum* takes various tenses of indic., but in the common sense meaning merely 'while,' and denoting a longer period, during part of which something else has happened, it is joined with pres. indic., even when past time is referred to.

21. *hoc pugnae etc.*, 'the time gained by this fight helped our men greatly to secure their safety,' lit. 'brought our men a great impulse towards safety.'

26. *numerus* is used not only of number but also quantity, as in the expression, *magnus numerus frumenti*.

## LII.

1. *his ... omnibus*, 'owing to all these things,' abl. of cause.

2. *non solum etc.* 'not only through present scarcity,' but also 'through fear as to the future.' The mss. read *praesentis*, which would agree with *temporis*, but the sense would be the same.

4. *ad denarios etc.*, 'the price of corn had risen to fifty *denarii* a *modius*.' This measure was about a third of our bushel, its usual price was rather less than a *denarius* (about 8d.).

10. *illi ... rebus*, 'while the others had abundance of everything.'

14. *inopiam ... tutabatur = suos ab inopia tutabatur*; cf. *iniurias defendere*, 7, l. 29.

## LIII.

2. *pleniora etc.*, 'with even greater fulness and wealth of detail' (than the facts warranted).

3. *rumor fingebat*. Some edd. read *rumore affingebant*, 'they invented besides in talk.'

6. *domum concursus etc.*, thronging of visitors to A.'s house. *Domum ad Afranium* is the regular expression, though A. himself was away.

10. *novissimi*, 'the last,' always used in this sense; the comp. and sup. of *novus*, 'new,' being usually supplied by *recens*; *magis novus* is also used.

## LIV.

5. *cuius generis* = *cuius generis quod*, 'of the type with which his experience of Britain in former years had made him acquainted.'

6. *carinae*, etc., 'the keels and framework were made of light wood.' These were 'coracles.'

10. *milites* etc., 'takes his soldiers across the river.' Note the double acc. construction like *traiecit* in 55, l. 2.

14. *ex utraque parte*, 'from both sides at once.'

## LV.

8. *eos propellant*. The pron. is necessary, because the new verb requires a different case from the preceding.

## LVI.

4. *huc* = *his*, 'to these.'

10. *adduxerat*. Note how the plupf. here and the imperf. *praecerat*, l. 12, are used after the historical pres. as if it were a true perfect.

13. *insulam*, supposed to be the modern Ratoneau.

## LVII.

4. *id muneris*, 'that service,' gen. of thing measured.

9. *pugnatum est* etc., 'the conflict was maintained on both sides with the greatest bravery and vigour.'

## LVIII.

3. *impetusque* etc., 'and did not wait to receive their attacks,' i.e. the charge with the beak (*rostrum*).

6. *remos ... detergere*, 'to sweep off their oars as they ran past.'

10. *cum .. tum etiam*, 'not only ... but also.' When the time of the two verbs is the same, as here, *cum* is followed by indic., but when the *cum*-clause denotes time prior to that of the *tum*-clause, it takes the subj.

12. *neque dum* = *et nondum*, 'and not yet.'



15. *non eundem* etc., 'were not equally serviceable for speed.'

16. *dum* = *dummodo*, 'provided that.'

19. *diversi*, cf. note on 40, l. 22.

## LIX.

1. *ad Ilerdam*. Caesar was not *in* the town, but near it, hence the prep. ; cf. 41, l. 8.

5. *non longo* etc. The abl. of measure of space is used where we might expect the acc. of space covered. *Alia* is used only of time by Caesar.

9. *ex itinere*, 'in the middle of their march.'

## LX.

1. *Oscenses*, 'the people of *Oscæ*,' now Huesca. *Calagurris* is now Caladhorra.

2. *contributi*, 'confederate,' is usually followed by dat. or acc. with *in*.

4. *Tarraconenses*. Tarraco is now Tarragona. The *Jacetani* and *Ausetani* were tribes in the region of Catalonia, in the N.E. of *Hispania Citerior*, while the *Illurgavonenses* were in the E. of that province.

10. *signa .. transfert*, 'goes over to him bodily while on guard.' Cf. note on 21, l. 13.

11. *magna* etc., sc. *facta est* or *erat*.

14. *de auxiliis* etc., 'about the succours to be brought by the legions,' cf. 39. *Auxilia* usually means 'auxiliary infantry,' as distinct from legionaries ; so in 61, l. 18.

## LXI.

6. *partem aliquam*, 'a considerable part.'

12. *huic consilio* etc., 'this plan was recommended also by the consideration that, of the two opposite parties, those States which had sided with S. in the former war, and been conquered, feared the name and authority of P. even in his absence, while those' etc. Observe *ille*, 'the following.'

19. *suis locis*, 'in a favourable position.'

20. *conquirere ... adduci*. Note the change from act. to pass. infin., which no doubt is intentional. Those who sought

out the vessels would not necessarily *themselves* bring them to Octogesa. (Cf. *conquirant* and *deducendus eurent*, 30, l. 4.) This town apparently lay on the left bank of the Sègre, near its junction with the Ebro.

23. XXX. The mss. read xx, which is considered too small a distance.

## LXII.

2. *continuato* etc., 'carrying on the work continuously for a day and a night.'

3. *huc*, 'to this point,' explained by following *ut*-clause.

7. *exstarent*. The mss. read *castare*, with which infin. *possent* alone would be repeated.

10. *vadum*, evidently not a natural ford, but the result of Caesar's engineering, as yet only considered fit for cavalry.

## LXIII.

4. *copiis*, cf. note on *navibus*, 34, l. 5.

6. *relinquebatur* etc., 'nothing remained for C. but to annoy, etc.'

8. *magnum ... habebat*, 'involved a long détour to reach it.' The *ut*-clause which follows is of course consecutive—'so that.'

11. *de tertia vigilia*, 'in the third watch,' cf. *de media nocte*. The night was divided into four watches.

12. *sese ad* etc., 'appeared on their rear.'

14. *morari...* The object has to be supplied.

## LXIV.

4. *nonnumquam* etc., 'that they sometimes halted the rear-guard, and so became divided, while at other times a general advance was made.'

8. *dolere*, 'were expressing their vexation.' This and the verbs *circulari*, *adire* and *obsecrare* are historical intins., so the subject *milites* is nom.

11. *ut per eos* etc., 'to tell Caesar not to spare them toil or danger.' An uncommon use of *certiorem facere* (usually 'to inform'), cf. *B.G.* 3, 5, *certiores fecit suos paulisper proelium intermitterent*.

15. *tantae* etc., 'to the river in its swollen condition.'

21. *magnoque* etc., 'stationing a large number of beasts of burden in the river above and below' (the line of march) in order to break the current.

26. *miliū sex*. Thus the new ford was three miles higher up the river than the camp.

29. *nonam, i.e.*, about 3 P.M., as the Roman day began at sunrise.

## LXV.

8. *a milibus* etc., 'at a distance of five miles difficult and narrow roads immediately followed.' This form of expression (*ab* with measure of distance) is used when the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned.

## LXVI.

5. *vasa...conclamari*, 'that the shout be raised for packing the baggage.' The trumpet was sounded three times when a Roman army was to march. At the first blast the tents were struck and the baggage packed; at the second everything was got ready, and at the third the march began.

12. *Saxa*, a Celtiberian whom Caesar made a Roman citizen. He afterwards became a tribune of the *plebs* and then governor of Syria.

15. *excipere*, 'there followed' used absolutely.

16. *qui prior* etc., 'whoever first secured this defile, would have no difficulty in barring the enemy's way.'

## LXVII.

5. *pridie noctu*, 'the night before,' cf. *cras mane*.

6. *argumenti* etc., 'took it as a proof.'

10. *timeri* etc., 'is wont to obey the dictates of fear rather than of conscience.'

11. *at luce* etc., 'but by daylight shame has much power through (being under) the eyes of all, and the presence of the tribunes and centurions too inspires fear.' For *lucē... posse... metam* the MSS. read *lucem... per se... multum* which does not give a very satisfactory sense.

15. *etsi... accepto*. Observe the concessive conjunction with *abl. abs.*

17. *vincit*, 'prevails,' 'is carried.'

## LXVIII.

8. *ut arma* etc., 'so that the arms had to be passed from hand to hand.'

9. *alii ab aliis*, 'by one another.'

11. *eum*. This pron. probably is attracted to the gender of *laborem* by the idiom noticed on 47, l. 6, and is explained by the *si*-clause following—'they thought that if they could cut off... *that* would be the end of all their toils.'

## LXIX.

4. *necessarii ... inopia*, 'by starvation.' The *or. obl.* is introduced by *vocibus*.

9. *quod ... videbant*, 'the fact that they saw' etc., a substantial clause which is subject to *adiuvabat*.

13. *superare* etc., 'were getting beyond the direction of their camp,' *i.e.* past the point where they were in a line with (*e regione*) the camp. As A.'s camp lay between Caesar's and the mouth of the defile leading to the Ebro, C. had to get round it, if possible. He started as if to return towards Lerida, made a long *détour* to the right, and when hidden by hills, wound round their camp at a distance, so that when next seen he was as near the river as they, though his route was rougher. Then a race ensued to the mouth of the defile.

15. *fugiens laboris*, 'disposed to shirk his work,' the only instance in Caesar of a pres. participle used with an objective gen.

*quin putaret*, 'as not to think.'

16. *conclamatur* etc., 'the cry To arms! is raised.'

## LXX.

7. *priores*, adverbial, going with *attigissent*—'if they should be the first to reach the mountains they were making for.'

8. *ipsi* etc. This clause is virtually concessive—'though they would escape the danger themselves, they would not be able to save the baggage' etc.

10. *quibus*, dat. after *ferri*.

12. *ex ... rupibus*, 'after the great rocks' (ch. 68).

17. *qui erat* etc., 'the highest of all in sight.' This is the regular expression, not *in conspectu caelestissimum*.

21. *iugis*, 'along the heights,' abl. of direction of motion.

24. *minimam partem*, 'a moment' = *punctum*.

## LXXI.

1. *erat ... rei*, 'it was an opportunity for striking a decisive blow.' *Rem gerere*, 'to carry on war,' 'to fight.'

6. *idque, i.e., ut confingeretur*.

8. *ne dubitaret*, (asking him) 'not to hesitate,' oblique petition.

11. *sui timoris* etc., 'had betrayed their alarm.'

13. *collatis ... conferti*, 'huddled together, with their standards collected into one place.'

## LXXII.

1. *eam* is inserted because the next clause explains what the hope was. We say simply 'had conceived the hope.'

5. *amitteret*. This and the following subj. express *deliberation*—'why should he lose'?—*amittam* in *oratio recta*.

9. *civium*, obj. gen., 'pity for his countrymen.'

11. *rem obtinere*, 'to carry his point,' 'succeed.'

12. *plerisque*, dat., 'did not commend itself to very many' of the officers. We find another constr. of *probo* in 74. l. 31.

18. *sese referunt*, 'retire,' like *se recipiunt*.

20. *quam proxime* etc., 'as near as possible,' cf. note on 84, l. 19.

## LXXIII.

2. *omnem* etc., 'they had given up all hope of (supplying) their commissariat and (reaching) the R. Ebro.'

6. *nuntiantur*, 'word is brought to them that the men told off to fetch water' etc. The *personal* pass. constr. with verbs of saying, thinking etc., is preferred in Latin, see note on 14, l. 6.

9. *alariarum*. The troops supplied by the provinces were called *alarii* or *auxilia*. The former term was applied in earlier days to the *Socii*, or Italian allies.

10. *vallum ducere*, 'to construct a stockade,' prob. to the Sègre.

## LXXIV.

2. *quem quisque* etc., 'each one inquires for and calls out any acquaintance or fellow-townsmen he had in the camp' (of Caesar, which was quite near).

6. *eorum* etc., (they say) 'it is by their favour that they are alive.'

7. *imperatoris*, etc., 'they inquire about the general's good faith, whether they could safely put themselves in his power.'

8. *quod non*. Observe that the negative is not carried on into the clause introduced by *que*, which may be translated 'but,' like *atque* in 44, l. 18.

13. *quibus* etc. The participle is probably conditional—'if assurances should be given on these points.'

14. *signa translaturus*, cf. 60, l. 10.

23. *per quem* etc., 'by whose introduction each of them had a chance of gaining access to Caesar.' *Ad. comm.*, 'access by recommendation.'

27. *erant* etc., 'everywhere expressions of joy and congratulations were heard.' Elsewhere in Caesar *plenus* takes gen.

29. *videbantur* is taken twice, in both relative clauses.

*magnumque* etc., 'and C. in the opinion of all was reaping a rich harvest from his former clemency.'

## LXXV.

4. *quieto ... animo*, 'calmly and with resignation.' On account of his conduct on this occasion Afranius was subsequently accused of treason, Book iii. 83.

5. *non deserit se*, 'did not give himself up.' For *familia*, cf. 14, l. 20.

6. *praetoria cohorte*, 'the general's bodyguard,' see *Introd.* ii. § 8.

11. *sinistras* etc., 'they roll their cloaks round their left arms,' as a substitute for the shields which they had left behind.

## LXXVI.

2. *neu ... obsecrat*, 'and implores them not to deliver him or P., his commander-in-chief, to the enemy to be punished.' An exaggerated appeal.

6. *iurent*. They had already been bound by the regular *sacramentum*, or military oath, when first enrolled. This was now renewed.

9. *idem* etc., 'he makes A. take the same oath.'

12. *penes quem* etc., 'that whoever had one of Caesar's men with him should produce him.' Supply *ab eo* with *producat*.

18. *rem* etc., 'brought things back to their former relations of hostility.'

## LXXVII.

6. *magno* etc., 'he treated with much respect.'

7. *equites* here refers to those knights who had been military tribunes. The military tribunes were all of equestrian rank, though knights serving in the army were not necessarily tribunes.

## LXXVIII.

1. *pabulatione*. 'by the difficulty of procuring forage.' Here *premi* takes abl. of the thing in respect of which the pressure is felt.

3. *dierum VII.*, 'seven days' supply.' The mss. read *XXII.*, but as there were fifty legionary cohorts and eighty of auxiliaries, and four days had not yet elapsed since they left Herda, they could not have been in actual want, had the legionaries really carried 22 days' supply; besides, such a weight in addition to their ordinary load would have been excessive even for legionaries. The copyists very often made mistakes in numerals.

13. *quo spatio* etc., 'and in such a distance they perceived that the undertaking might be liable to more mischances.'

17. *nullum* etc., 'immediately the rearmost became engaged.'

## LXXIX.

2. *novissimum* etc., 'brought up the rear.' *Plures* just after is adverbial—'in larger numbers' than usually composed the rear guard.

7. *suberat*. When *cum* has the sense 'whenever,' 'as often as,' it is followed by the indic. even of historical tenses in the best writers of Caesar's time.

9. *in aversos*, 'on their rear.'

10. *magno ... res*, 'the situation was one of great peril.'

11. *legionum signa*, 'the main body of the legions.'

16. *tantum* etc., 'so far were they from getting help from their cavalry.' The mss. read *auxiliis*, which Madvig has with great probability corrected.

19. *ultro*, 'actually,' doing just what the cavalry should have done for them.

*ex itinere* etc., 'to straggle,' 'leave the line of march.'

## LXXX.

3. *subsistunt*, '*men* halt.' The subject is quite indefinite, as the next words, *ut tum accidit*, show that what precedes is a general statement.

6. *una fronte*, 'with a single front,' *i.e.* with no fortification except on the side facing the enemy.

12. *animum adversa*, written separately for *animadversa* : cf. *animum adverterunt*, l. 9. We find *animadverso* in 81, l. 9.

14. *hora decima* apparently only refers to the foragers who might include infantry and so would require a rest. The next line shows that the cavalry were not to wait till the tenth hour.

## LXXXI.

4. *natura ... loco*, 'in a position naturally unfavourable.'

6. *et ... non* instead of *neque* marks that this was an unusual course.

9. *erumperent*. Note the change of subject.

*illi* etc., 'observing the faulty situation of their camp, they keep pushing out their lines all night, and changing camp for camp,' *i.e.* they construct new lines in a better position for defence, nearer to Caesar (only 2000 paces from his camp), but further from water.

14. *praesenti* etc. 'their present disadvantage was being remedied at the cost of other disadvantages.' *Malo* is dat.

18. *male haberi*, cf. 63, l. 8.

22. *quo* = *ad quas*, sc. *eruptiones*.

24. *ad iter*. The mss. read *ad id*, which would mean 'for sallying out.'



## LXXXII.

8. *contra* etc., 'for the appearance of having shirked a battle, against the feeling of his soldiers and public opinion (lit. the talk of all), was damaging him greatly,' *i.e.* destroying his prestige.

12. *spatii* etc., 'owing to the narrow space, even if the enemy were put to flight, a victory could not help much towards the decision.' Madvig has by a fine emendation restored proper sense to the passage, the MSS. reading *brevitas* and *victoriae* - 'the shortness of the space ... could not help much towards the decision of the victory'!

15. *hinc duas* etc., 'two-thirds of this (space).' *Hinc = ex his*. So *tres partes*, 'three quarters.' In fractions when the denom. exceeds the numerator by only one it is not expressed in Latin.

20. *signa inferentibus*, 'if they advanced upon him.'

## LXXXIII.

2. *in subsidiis*, 'as a reserve.' Thus the auxiliary foot formed practically a third line, but Caesar's army was drawn up more in the usual order, *i.e.* the three lines were composed wholly of legionaries. See *Introd.* ii. § 4.

6. *suae cuiusque* etc., 'belonging to their respective legions,' for *suae quaeque*, by a curious attraction of *quisque* to the case of *suas* which frequently occurs, as in Livy, 33. 46, *pecunia quae in stipendium Romanis suo quoque anno penderetur*, where *quaeque* would be regular.

7. *media acie*, *i.e.* in the intervals between the legionary cohorts.

8. *tenere* etc., 'both generals seemed to keep to their purpose.' That is, though Caesar posted his skirmishers and cavalry in their proper place, so as to have an advantage if obliged to fight, he showed by not making them advance that he would not take the offensive; while Afranius, who did not venture to bring up his useless cavalry or foreign auxiliaries to the front, still by remaining in order of battle forced Caesar to do the same, and thus stopped his works.

## LXXXIV.

1. *omnibus rebus*, 'in every respect,' the blockade being complete. *Inopia* in l. 3 is abl. of cause.

9. *ipsis*, himself and Petreius.

11. *satis*, etc. 'they had now satisfied the claims of duty and had been punished enough.' The subject *se* must be supplied here and in the following sentences, as in 6, l. 13.

14. *prohiberi ingressu*, 'they were prevented from moving.'

17. *ad ultimum* etc., either 'to come forth to suffer extreme punishment' or 'to proceed to the last extremity against themselves,' *i.e.* 'to commit suicide'; cf. 22, l. 23.

19. *quam potest* etc., 'as humbly as possible.' The sense would be the same without *potest*.

#### LXXXV.

1. *nulli* etc., 'there was no one in the world for whom this rôle either of complaint or self-pity had been more inappropriate.'

6. *ut quam* etc., 'in order that there might be as little prejudice as possible to the cause of peace,' *i.e.* that nothing might be done which would make peace impossible, except at terrible cost.

9. *illius*, probably taken with *exercitus*, 'the opposing army.'

11. *omnium suorum*, including Afranius and Petreius themselves.

12. *omnium ordinum* etc., 'the part played by all ranks had been a merciful one,' lit. 'had rested on pity.' Same sense of *partes* as in l. 2.

20. *illorum humilitate*, 'taking advantage of their humiliation,' an abl. of attendant circumstances.

21. *quibus* etc., 'anything by which his own resources might be increased.'

26. *submissos*, 'sent to their aid'; cf. 43, l. 16.

31. *in se* etc., 'it was against him that novel commands were established.' Here and in the two sentences following *se* is apparently acc., while *in se uno*, l. 38, is 'in his case alone.'

34. *iura ... commutari*, by the *Lex Pompeia De Provinciis*. See Introd. i. § 5.

*ex praetura*, 'on resigning the praetorship'; cf. 22, l. 12.

37.  *nihil*  etc., 'did not avail to prevent men who had served with credit in former wars being called out' etc. The  *probati*  had been honourably discharged. For  *quin*  the mss. reading is  *quod* , 'because,' and some edd. have  *cum* , 'since.'

40.  *cum honore* , i.e. a triumph, which had not been granted to Caesar, though frequent  *supplicationes* , or public thanksgivings had been voted for his victories in Gaul.

44.  *id agere* , 'was it his object.'  *Hoc ago*  is thus used in  *oratio recta* .

47.  *excederent* , 'let them quit,' oblique petition, subj. representing an imperative.

## LXXXVI.

3.  *ut ... ferrent* . This clause is epexegetical (or explanatory) of  *id* .

4.  *ultro* , 'actually,' 'on the contrary,' as in 79, l. 19.

8.  *omni .. fide* , 'though every pledge should be given.'

11.  *huc* , 'to this conclusion,' explained by the  *ut* -clause following.

12.  *ad Varum* . The  *Varus*  (Var) was the E. boundary of Further Gaul.

14.  *a Caesare cavetur* , 'a guarantee is given by C.'

## LXXXVII.

4.  *quae ... suos* , 'such things, that is, as were in the hands of his men.' This relative clause limits  *quod* , 'whatever,' in that which precedes.

5.  *qui amiserant* . The strict  *or. obl.*  requires  *amisissent* , but the clause practically means 'the losers'; cf. note on  *quae causa fuerat* , 47, l. 6.

9.  *in ius* , 'to have them tried.'

10.  *cum stipendium*  etc., 'when P. and A. were being pressed by the legions for their pay in almost a mutinous way, and said the pay-day had not yet arrived,' etc.  *Flagito*  can take a double acc., as in  *B. G. l. 16, Caesar Haeduos frumentum ... flagitare* . Here the mss. read  *flagitarctur* , with  *stipendium*  as subject, but this makes it necessary to change  *postulatum est*  into  *postularunt*  (with some edd.) or  *Petreius*  etc. would be nom. without a verb.  *Dicerent*  probably

depends on *cum*, as *cuius* = *et eius*, but it may also be explained as *virtual* or. obl. ; cf. note on 20, l. 11.

14. *duas* etc., 'he ordered two of his own legions to march before, and the rest to follow, so as to encamp at no great distance from one another.' He kept two legions to send into Further Spain, so that four legions were told off to march to the Var.

16. *non longo* go closely together, otherwise we should have *ne*.

17. *hoc praescripto*, 'in accordance with this order,' abl. of condition.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

A., *active*; abbrev., *abbreviation*; abl., *ablative*; absol., *absolutely*; acc., *accusative*; adv., *adverb*; cf., *confer, compare*; comm., *common gender*; comp., *comparative*; conj., *conjunction*; def., *defective*; demonstr., *demonstrative*; dep., *deponent*; dim., *diminutive*; distrib., *distributive*; = meaning *the same as*; esp., *especially*; f., *feminine*; fr., *from*; freq., *frequentative*; id., *idem, the same*; impers., *impersonal*; incept., *inceptive*; indecl., *indeclinable*; indef., *indefinite*; inf., *infinitive*; interrog., *interrogative*; irr., *irregular*; m., *masculine*; n., *number*; num., *numeral*; opp., *opposed in meaning to*; ord., *ordinal*; orig., *originally*; part., *participle*; pass., *passive*; pl., *plural*; poss., *possessive*; prep., *preposition*; pron., *pronoun*; rel., *relative*; sc., *scilicet, or next understood*; sing., *singular*; subst., *substantive*; sup., *superlative*; usu., *usually*; v., *verb*; v. a. n., *verb active and neuter*; w., *with*.

The words in brackets either indicate the derivation of a word, or are closely akin to it. In compound words when one part is scarcely altered, or not at all, only the other is given.

The numerals which occur are given in the Vocabulary, but as many are expressed in the text by symbols, the following list is added to indicate the full expressions whether cardinal, ordinal, or numeral adverbs, which must be looked for.

II, duo; III, tres; IIII, quattuor; V, quinque; VI, sex; VII, septem or septimus; VIII, octo or octavus; VIII and IX, novem; X, decem; XI, undecim; XII, duodecim or duodecimus; XIII, tredecim or tertius decimus; XIII, quartus decimus; XVII, septemdecim; XX, viginti; XXII, duo et viginti; XXX, triginta; L, quinquaginta; LX, sexages; LXX, septuaginta; LXXX, octoginta; CC, ducenti; CCC, trecenti; CCCC, quadringenti; DC, sexcenti; DCCCC, nongenti.

## VOCABULARY.

- a, ab,** prep. w. abl. *by, from;*  
*a fronte, in front.*
- ab-dūco,** xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead away, withdraw.*
- āb-horrĕo,** ūi, 2. v. n. w. ab, *to be averse to.*
- ab-lātus,** a, um, part. pass. *aufero.*
- ab-rīpiō,** ūi, reptum, 3. v. a. *to snatch away, wrest [rapio].*
- absens,** tis, adj. *absent [ab-sum].*
- ab-sum,** fūi, esse, v. n. irr. *to be absent, distant.*
- āb-undo,** āvi, 1. v. n. *to abound [unda].*
- ac,** conj. *and.*
- ac-cĕdo,** ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. *to approach; w. ad, to join [ad, cedo].*
- ac-cīdo,** di, 3. v. n. *to happen, befall [ad, cado].*
- ac-cīpiō,** cĕpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. *to receive, sustain [ad, capio].*
- ācer,** ris, re, *sharp, keen, eager.*
- ācerbĕ,** adv. *bitterly, harshly [acerbus].*
- ācerbītas,** ātis, f. *bitterness, harshness [id.].*
- ācervus,** i, m. *a heap, pile.*
- ācies,** ēi, f. *a line of battle [ac- in acer, etc.].*
- ācrīter,** ācrīus, ācerrīmĕ, adv. *fiercely, eagerly [acer].*
- actiō,** ōnis, f. *an action; pl. proceedings [ago].*
- actūārīus,** a, um, *propelled by oars [id.].*
- ad,** prep. w. acc. *to, at, near, towards.*
- ād-āquor,** ātus, 1. v. dep. *to fetch water.*
- ad-do,** didi, dītum, 3. v. a. *to add.*
- ad-dūco,** xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to bring to, constrain.*
- ād-ĕo,** īvi or īi, itum, 4. v. a. n. *to go to, approach.*
- ādĕo,** adv. *so, to such an extent.*
- ād-haerĕo,** haesi, sum, 2. v. n. *to stick to, be entangled.*
- ād-hībĕo,** ūi, itum, 2. v. a. *to apply, employ [habeo].*
- ād-hortor,** ātus, 1. v. dep. *to exhort.*

- ād-īgo**, ēgi, actum, 3. v. a. *to drive to* [ago].  
**ād-īmo**, ēmi, emptum, 3. v. a. *to take away* [ad = ab, emo].  
**ādītus**, ūs, m. *an approach, access* [ad, co].  
**ād-iungo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to join, attach*.  
**ādīūtōr**, ōris, m. *a helper, supporter* [ad, iuvo].  
**ād-iūvo**, iūvi, iūtum, 1. v. a. *to help, support*.  
**administrātiō**, ōnis, f. *a carrying on, working*.  
**ad-mīnistro**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to carry on, manage* [minister].  
**ad-mīror**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to wonder (at)*.  
**ād-ōrīor**, ortus, 4. v. dep. *to rise up (against), attack*.  
**ād-orno**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to fit out, prepare*.  
**ad-servo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to watch, guard*.  
**ad-sum**, fūi, esse, v. n. irr. *to be present, at hand*.  
**ādūlātiō**, ōnis, f. *flattery*.  
**ādūlescens**, entis, part. *adolesco*; subst. m. *a young man, youth*.  
**ad-vēho**, vexi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to bring, convey to*.  
**ad-vēnio**, vēni, ventum, 4. v. n. *to come to, arrive*.  
**ad-vento**, āvi, 1. v. n. freq. *to approach* [advenio].  
**adventus**, ūs, m. *approach, arrival* [id.].  
**adversārius**, i, m. *an adversary* [adversus].  
**adversus**, prep. w. acc. *against*; adv. *montem, uphill* [adverto].  
**ad-vertō**, ti, sum, 3. v. a. *to turn to*; *animum, to turn the mind to, to observe*, = animadverto; see note on 80, l. 12.  
**ad-vōlo**, āvi, 1. v. n. *to fly to, hurry up*.  
**aegrē**, adv. *scarcely, with difficulty* [aeger].  
**aequitas**, ātis, f. *justice, fairness*.  
**aequus**, a, um, *even, level; fair; favourable*; *aequo animo, contentedly*.  
**aerārīum**, i, n. *a treasury, esp. the State treasury at Rome* [aes].  
**aes**, aeris, n. *bronze, money*.  
**aestimātiō**, ōnis, f. *a valuation, estimate* [aestimo].  
**aetas**, ātis, f. *an age, period*.  
**affectus**, a, um, part. *afficio*.  
**af-fēro**, attūli, allātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to bring (to), cause, report* [ad, fero].  
**af-ficō**, fēcī, fectum, 3. v. a. *to influence, treat*; *affectus valetudine, suffering from ill-health*; *beneficiis, having experienced favours* [ad, facio].  
**affīnitas**, ātis, f. *a marriage connexion* [ad, finis].  
**āger**, gri, m. *land, territory* [ἀγρός].  
**agger**, ēris, m. *a rampart, bank; earth, brushwood, etc., for making a rampart* [ad-gero].  
**aggrēdiōr**, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to attack, attempt* [ad, gradior].

- agmen**, *inis*, n. a marching column, army on the march [ago].
- āgo**, *ēgi*, actum, 3. v. a. n. to do, act; drive, bring up; gratias, to give thanks; cum aliquo, to treat, plead with someone; id agere ut, to make it one's object.
- ālārīus**, a, um, auxiliary, orig. belonging to the wings [ala].
- albēo**, *ūi*, 2. v. n. to be white or grey [albus].
- ālias**, adv. at another time; al. ... al. at one time ... at another [alius].
- ālīēnus**, a, um, belonging to another, estranged; aes, debt [id.].
- ālīquando**, adv. at some time, at length [aliquis].
- ālīqui**, qua, quod, indef. pron. adj. some.
- ālīquis**, quid, indef. pron. someone, something.
- ālīquot**, indecl. num. adj. several.
- ālīus**, a, ud, gen. ālius, adj. another, other, different.
- allātus**, a, um, part. affero.
- ālo**, *ūi*, 3. v. a. to nourish, maintain.
- alter**, *ēra*, *ērum*, the one, the other (of two), second.
- altītūdo**, *inis*, f. height, depth.
- altus**, a, um, high, deep.
- ambo**, bae, bo, num. adj. both.
- āmīcītīa**, ae, f. friendship.
- āmīcus**, a, um, friendly; subst. m. a friend [amo].
- ā-mitto**, *mīsi*, *missum*, 3. v. a. to lose.
- amplius**, comp. adv. more (usu. without quam).
- amplus**, a, um, great, honourable.
- an**, interrog. conj. whether, or.
- ancōra**, ae, f. an anchor [ἀγκύρα].
- angūlus**, *i*, m. a corner.
- angustē**, *ius*, *issīme*, adv. within narrow limits.
- angustīae**, *ārum*, f. pl. narrowness, straits, difficulties.
- angustus**, a, um, narrow.
- ānimadverto**, *ti*, *sum*, 3. v. n. to turn the mind to, observe [see adverto].
- ānimus**, *i*, m. the mind, disposition.
- annōna**, ae, f. the price of corn; orig. the year's produce [annus].
- annus**, *i*, m. a year [orig. circle, hence ānūlus, ring].
- antē**, prep. w. acc. and adv. before.
- antēā**, adv. before, previously.
- antē-cēdo**, *ssi*, *ssum*, 3. v. n. to go before, precede.
- antē-cursor**, *ōris*, m. a fore-runner; pl. advanced guard [curro].
- antē-ēo**, *īvi* or *īi*, *ītum*, 4. v. n. to go before, be first.
- antē-quam**, conj. before (that).
- antē-sīgnāni**, *orum*, m. soldiers who marched before the standards [signum].
- antīquīus**, adv. from old time, of old.
- antīquus**, a, um, old, ancient.



āpērīo, ěrīi, ertum, 4. v. a.  
to open.

āpertus, a, um, part. aperio;  
adj. open, unprotected.

appello, āvi, 1. v. a. to call,  
appeal to.

ap-pello, pūli, pulsum, 3. v.  
a. to bring up, bring to land  
[ad].

ap-pĕto, īvi, ĭtum, 3. v. a. to  
covet [ad].

ap-prōpinquo, āvi, 1. v. n. to  
draw near, approach [ad].

aptus, a, um, fit, prepared  
[apiscor].

āpud, prep. w. acc. at, in  
presence of, with.

āqua, ae, f. water; pl. floods.

āquātor, ōris, m. a water-  
carrier.

āquor, ātus, 1. v. dep. to fetch  
water.

arbītror, ātus, 1. v. dep. to  
think, consider [arbiter].

arcāno, adv. secretly [ar-  
canus].

arcesso, īvi, ĭtum, 3. v. a. to  
send for, summon.

argūmentum, i, n. a proof  
[arguo].

arma, ōrum, n. pl. arms,  
weapons.

armāmentum, i, n. a sail  
[armo].

armātūra, ae, f. a mode of  
arming; see note on 48,  
l. 26 [id.].

armo, āvi, 1. v. a. to arm,  
equip [arma].

arrōgāntia, ae, f. haughtiness  
[ad, rogo].

artificiūm, i, n. manoeuvre,  
artifice [ars, facio].

ascendo, dī, sum, 3. v. a. n.  
to climb, ascend [ad,  
scando].

asper, ěra, ěrum, rough,  
hardy.

assuē-fāciō, fĕci, factum, 3.  
v. a. to accustom, w. abl. of  
that to which [ad-suesco].

atque, conj. and, and yet.

at-tingo, tīgi, tactum, 3. v.  
a. to reach, border on [ad,  
tango].

at-trībūo, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a.  
to assign; make tributary  
to.

auctor, ōris, m. an adviser  
[augeo].

auctōritas, ātis, f. authority,  
influence; see note on 32,  
l. 29.

audācia, ae, f. boldness  
[audax].

audacter, adv. boldly [id.].

audĕo, ausus, 2. v. semi-dep.  
to dare.

audīo, īvi, ĭtum, 4. v. a. to  
hear.

aufĕro, abstūli, ablātum, 3. v.  
a. to carry away [ab, fero].

augĕo, auxi, auctum, 2. v. a.  
to increase.

aut, conj. or; aut ... aut,  
either ... or.

autem, conj. but.

auxiliāris, e, auxiliary;  
subst. m. pl. auxiliaries.

auxiliūm, i, n. help, aid; pl.  
auxiliaries.

āversus, a, um, part. avertō;  
in aversos, on the rear.

ā-vertō, ti, sum, 3. v. a. to  
turn away, divert; se, to  
be alienated.

barbārus, a, um, *outlandish* ;  
subst. m. *a barbarian*.

bellum, i, n. *war*.

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*.

bēnē, inēlius, optimē, adv.  
*well* [bonus].

—bēnēficiārius, i, m. *a recipient  
of favours*.

bēnēficiūm, i, n. *a kindness,  
favour* [bene, facio].

bidūm, i, n. *a space of two  
days* [bis, dies].

bīni, ae, a, distrib. num. adj.  
*two each* ; with pl. words  
like castra, simply *two*  
[bis].

bōnus, a, um, *good* ; subst.  
bonum, i, n. *a good, advan-  
tage*.

brēvis, e, *short* [βραχύς].

brēvitas, ātis, f. *shortness*.

C., abbrev. for Caius, a  
Roman (first) name.

cādo, cēcīdi, cāsūm, 3. v. n.  
*to fall*.

caecus, a, um, *blind* ; *unseen*.

caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3. v. a.  
*to cut, strike, kill*.

caelum, i, n. *the sky*.

—cālo, ōnis, m. *a soldier's ser-  
vant, slave*.

—campester, tris, tre, *level,  
plain*.

campus, i, m. *a plain*.

cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3. v. a.  
*to take*.

cārīna, ae, f. *a keel*.

—carpo, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. *to  
harass*.

—carrus, i, m. *a cart, waggon*.

castellum, i, n. *a fort* [dim.  
of castrum].

—castigo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to chide,  
rebuke* [castus, ago].

castra, ōrum, n. pl. *a camp*.

cāsus, ūs, m. *a fall, disaster,  
event* [cado].

causa, ae, f. *a cause, reason* ;  
abl. sing. w. gen. *on  
account of*.

—cāvēo, cāvi, cautum, 2. v. a.  
n. *to beware (of)* ; *to give  
security* ; w. ab, *to guard  
against*.

cēler, ēris, ēre, *quick, swift*.

cēlērītas, ātis, f. *speed, swift-  
ness*.

cēlērīter, adv. *quickly*.

—cēlo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to conceal*.

censēo, ūi, censum, 2. v. n.  
*to think, express an opinion*.

censor, ōris, m. *a censor, a  
Roman magistrate* [censeo].

centūrīa, ae, f. *a century,  
orig. 100 men, see Introd.  
ii. § 1-2* [centum].

centūrīātīm, adv. *by cen-  
turies*.

centūrīo, ōnis, m. *a centurion,  
commander of a century*.

cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3. v. a.  
*to perceive, see*.

certāmen, īnis, n. *a contest*  
[certo].

certē, adv. *certainly, surely*.

certo, āvi, 1. v. n. *to strive,  
contend*.

certus, a, um, *certain, fixed* ;  
certiorem facere, *to inform,  
tell* (pass. certior fieri).

cētērus, a, um, *the rest* ; usu.  
pl. *the others*.

—cetrātus, a, um, *armed with  
the cetra, a light leather  
buckler*.

**cingo**, nxi, nctum, 3. v. a. to surround.

**circā**, prep. w. acc. and adv. around.

**circīter**, prep. w. acc. and adv. about (of time and number).

**circūitus**, ūs, m. a circuit, detour [circum, eo].

**circūlor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. to gather in groups [circulus].

**circum-do**, dēdi, dātum, 1. v. a. to surround.

**circum-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. to carry round.

**circum-ēo**, īvi or īi, itum, 4. v. a. to go round, visit, surround.

**circum-fundo**, fūdi, fūsum, 3. v. a. to pour round; pass. to spread round.

**circum-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. to send round.

**circum-mūnio**, īvi, itum, 4. v. a. to wall round, invest.

**circum-mūnītio**, ōnis, f. a line of investment.

**circum-scribo**, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. to hamper, curtail the power of.

**circum-sisto**, stēti, 3. v. a. to stand round, surround.

**circum-vēnio**, vēni, ventum, 4. v. a. to surround; also w. abl. of that with which.

**cīterior**, us, comp. adj. on this side: Hispania citerior, *Hither Spain* [cis].

**cītrā**, prep. w. acc. on this side of.

**cītro**, adv. *hither*; usu. in phrase, *ultra citroque, to and fro*.

**cīvilis**, e, *belonging to citizens* dissensio, *discord among fellow-countrymen*.

**cīvis**, is, m. a citizen, fellow-countryman.

**cīvitas**, ātis, f. a state, community.

**clam**, adv. *secretly* [celo].

**clāmor**, ōris, m. a shout [clamo].

**classis**, is, f. a fleet.

**claudo**, si, sum, 3. v. a. to close; agmen, to bring up the rear.

**clāvus**, i, m. a nail, bolt.

**Cn.**, abbrev. for Cneius, a Roman (first) name.

**cōactus**, a, um, part. cogo, *under compulsion*.

**coepi**, isse, v. defect. to begin; pass. coeptus sum, w. pass. infin.

**cō-ēo**, īvi or īi, itum, 4. v. n. to gather together [cum, eo].

**cō-ercēo**, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. to restrain, constrain [cum, arceo].

**cōgīto**, āvi, 1. v. a. n. to think, plan [cum, agito].

**co-gnosco**, ōvi, itum, 3. v. a. to know, learn, take cognisance of [cum, nosco].

**cōgo**, cōgī, cōactum, 3. v. a. to collect, compel [cum, ago].

**cōhors**, rtis, f. a cohort, one of the divisions of a legion.

**cō-hortor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. to exhort [cum].

**collātus**, a, um, part. confero.

**col-laudo**, āvi, 1. v. a. to praise, commend [cum].

**collēga**, ae, m. a colleague [cum, lego].

- collēgium, i, n. a college, association of pontiffs, etc. [id.]
- col-līgo, lēgi, lectum, 3. v. a. to collect, gather [id.]
- collis, is, m. a hill.
- col-lōco, āvi, l. v. a. to post, station [cum].
- collōquium, i, n. a conference, parley.
- col-lōquor, lōcūtus, 3. v. dep. to converse [cum].
- cōlonus, i, m. a settler, farmer [colo].
- cōmītīālis, e, belonging to an assembly; dies, a day on which assemblies can be held.
- cōmītium, i, n. the place of assembly; pl. the elections [cum, eo].
- commēātus, ūs, m., usu. in pl. supplies, convoys [com-meo].
- com-mēmōro, āvi, l. v. a. to mention, recount [cum].
- commendātio, ōnis, f. a recommendation, introduction.
- com-mendo, āvi, l. v. a. to recommend [cum, mando].
- com-mīnus, adv. hand to hand, at close quarters [cum, manus].
- com-mitto, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. to commit, entrust; proelium, to engage in battle [cum].
- commōdē, ius, issimē, adv. conveniently.
- com-mōdus, a, um, convenient, easy; subst. n. an interest, advantage.
- com-mōror, ātus, l. v. dep. to delay, linger [cum].
- com-mūnio, īvi, itum, 4. v. a. to fortify [id.].
- com-mūnis, e, shared together, common [cum, munus].
- commūtātio, ōnis, f. a change.
- com-mūto, āvi, l. v. a. to change, alter [cum].
- com-pello, pūli, pulsum, 3. v. a. to drive (back).
- com-pērio, pēri, pertum, 4. v. a. to discover, ascertain [cum, pario].
- com-plēo, ēvi, ētum, 2. v. a. to fill, complete [cum].
- com-plūres, a and ia, adj. or subst. several, very many.
- com-pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3. v. a. to put together, settle.
- com-porto, āvi, l. v. a. to carry together.
- compōsitio, ōnis, f. a settlement, agreement [compono].
- con-cēdo, ssi, ssum, 3. v. a. to grant, allow [cum].
- concilio, āvi, l. v. a. to win, bring about.
- concilium, i, n. a council, assembly, see note on 19, l. 11.
- con-cipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a., with in se, to perpetrate, be guilty of [cum, capio].
- con-cito, āvi, l. v. a. freq. to rouse up; pass. to hasten [cum, cieo].
- con-clāmo, āvi, l. v. a. n. to shout together; ~~vasa~~, to shout for the baggage to be packed (the signal to prepare for a march).

**con-curro**, curri, cursum, 3. v. n. *to run or flock together* [cum].

**con-curso**, āvi, 1. v. n. freq. *to run to and fro, rush about* [id.].

**condīcio**, ōnis, f. *an offer, proposal*; pl. *terms, conditions* [cum, dic, root of dico].

**con-fēro**, tūli, collātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to bring together, collect*; arma, *to fight*; se, *to betake oneself*.

**con-fertus**, a, um, part. confercio, *crowded together* [cum, farcio].

**confestim**, adv. *forthwith*.

**conficio**, fēci, fectum, 3. v. a. *to make up, complete, carry out* [facio].

**con-fīdo**, fīsus, 3. v. n. semi-dep. *to trust, confide*.

**confirmātiō**, ōnis, f. *encouragement*.

**con-firmo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to strengthen, encourage*; *to assert confidently*.

**con-fitēor**, fessus, 2. v. dep. *to confess* [cum, fateor].

**con-fīcto**, āvi, 1. v. a. freq. *to harass, distress*.

**con-fīgo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. n. *to engage, fight*.

**con-fūgiō**, fūgi, 3. v. n., usu. with ad, *to fly to, have recourse to*.

**con-grēdiōr**, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to come together, meet in battle* [gradior].

**congressus**, ūs, m. *a meeting, engagement*.

**cōn-īcīo**, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. *to cast*; in fugam, *to put to flight* [cum, iacio].

**cō-nītor**, nisus, 3. v. dep. *to struggle, force one's way*.

**cōn-iungo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to join*; part. pass. coniunctus, *close to*.

**cōnor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to attempt, be about to*.

**con-quiesco**, ēvi, ētum, 3. v. n. *to rest, go to rest*.

**con-quiro**, quisivi, itum, 3. v. a. *to search for, hunt up* [cum, quaero].

**consanguīnēus**, a, um, *of one's own blood, related* [cum, sanguis].

**con-scendo**, di, sum, 3. v. a. *to go on board, embark on* [scando].

**con-scribo**, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. *to write down, enrol, levy*.

**con-sector**, ātus, 1. v. dep. freq. *to follow, pursue* [consequor].

**con-sentiō**, sensi, sensum, 4. v. n. *to agree, tally*.

**con-sēquor**, sēcūtus, 3. v. dep. *to follow, overtake; attain*.

**con-sēro**, rūi, rtum, 3. v. a. *to join together*; manum, *to fight hand to hand*.

**con-servo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to preserve, maintain*.

**consiliōr**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to consult, take counsel*.

**consilium**, i, n. *advice, a plan; a council of war*, see note on 19, l. 11.

**con-sisto**, stīti, stītum, 3. v. n. *to stand, be posted; halt*.

- conspēctus**, ūs, m. *sight, view.*  
**con-spīcīo**, spexī, spectum, 3. v. a. *to catch sight of, descry* [cum, specio].  
**conspīcor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to catch sight of* [id.].  
**constantīa**, ae, f. *firmness, stedfastness* [con-stans].  
**con-stītūo**, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to set up, draw up, post; to found; to determine* [cum, statuo].  
**con-sto**, stīti, stātum, 1. v. n. *to consist of, rest upon, with in and abl.; usu. impers. constat, it is agreed, well known.*  
**con-suesco**, suēvi, suētum, 3. v. n. *to be accustomed.*  
**consuētūdo**, ĩnis, f. *custom, habit.*  
**consul**, ūlis, m. *a consul, one of the two supreme magistrates at Rome.*  
**consūlāris**, e, *of a consul, consular; provincia, governed by a magistrate with the rank of consul.*  
**consulātus**, ūs, *a consulship.*  
**consūlo**, ūi, tum, 3. v. a. n. *to consult, deliberate; w. dat. to provide for, consider.*  
**consulto**, āvi, 1. v. n. freq. *to deliberate.*  
**consultum**, i, n. *a decree; esp. senatus cons. a decree of the Senate* [consulo].  
**con-sūmo**, mpsi, mptum, 3. v. a. *to use up, consume, spend.*  
**con-temno**, mpsi, mptum, 3. v. a. *to despise, slight.*  
**con-tendo**, di, tum, 3. v. n. *to strive, fight; hasten.*  
**contentiō**, ōnis, f. *an effort, exertion.*  
**contentus**, a, um, *satisfied, w. abl.* [contineo].  
**con-texo**, ūi, tum, 3. v. a. *to weave together, plait.*  
**contīnens**, entis, part. contineo; as adj. w. dat. *continuous with, adjoining; absol. self-restrained.*  
**contīnenter**, adv. *continuously.*  
**con-tīnēo**, ūi, tentum, 2. v. a. *to hold together, keep, confine* [teneo].  
**con-tingo**, tīgi, tactum, 3. v. a. *to touch, reach* [tango].  
**contīnūo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to carry on continuously.*  
**contīo**, ōnis, f. *an assembly; a speech* [con-ventio, venio].  
**contīōnor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to make a speech to an assembly.*  
**contrā**, prep. w. acc. and adv. *against, opposite, contrary to; on the other hand.*  
**contrā-dīco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. n. *to speak against (anything).*  
**con-trāho**, traxi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to draw together, collect.*  
**contrārīus**, a, um, *opposite, contrary* [contra].  
**contribūtus**, a, um, part. contribuo; adj. *confederate.*  
**contrōversīa**, ae, f. *a dispute, quarrel* [contro-versus].  
**contūmēliā**, ae, f. *an insult, affront.*  
**contūmēliōsus**, a, um, *insulting.*

con-vēho, vexi, ctum, 3. v. a.  
to carry together, collect.

con-vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.  
v. a. n. to come together;  
w. acc. to meet; w. dat. to  
suit.

conventus, ūs, m. a meeting,  
assemblage; a district.

con-vertō, ti, sum, 3. v. a. to  
turn, change, divert; part.  
pass. conversus, turning  
round.

conviciūm, i, n. an invective,  
abuse.

cō-ōriōr, ortus, 4. v. dep. to  
rise up together, arise.

cōpia, ae, f. a supply, plenty;  
pl. forces, troops [for co-  
opia, opes].

cōram, prep. w. abl. and adv.  
in presence of, face to face  
[co-oram, ōs].

cōriūm, i, n. a hide, leather.

cornu, ūs, n. a horn [κέρας].

corpus, ōris, n. a body, hull.

cor-rīpiō, ūi, reptum, 3 v. a.  
to seize, snatch; rebuke  
[cum, rapio].

cōtidīānus, a, um, daily.

cōtidie, adv. daily [quot,  
dies].

crātis, is, f. a hurdle, wicker-  
work.

crēber, bra, um, frequent;  
usu. pl. close together, opp.  
rarus.

crēbro, adv. frequently.

cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3. v. n.  
to grow, rise [creo].

crūdēlitas, ātis, f. cruelty  
[crudelis].

crūdēlter, ūs, issimē, adv.  
cruelly.

cum, prep. w. abl. with.

cum, conj. when, since,  
though; cum...tum, both...  
and.

cuncti, ae, a. all [con-iuncti  
fr. coniungo].

cunctōr, ātus, 1. v. dep. to  
delay, linger.

cūpidē, ūs, issimē, adv.  
eagerly.

cūpio, ivi, itum, 3. v. a. to  
desire.

cūro, āvi, 1. v. a. to care for;  
w. gerund, to get (some-  
thing) done, etc.

cursus, ūs, m. a running;  
magno cursu, at great  
speed.

custodiā, ae, f. protection; a  
guard of soldiers.

custodiō, ivi, itum, 4. v. a. to  
guard, watch.

custōs, ōdis, m. a guard (a  
single soldier).

D., abbrev. for Decimus, a  
Roman (first) name.

de, prep. w. abl. from, down  
from, about; de nocte, by  
night; his de causis, for  
these reasons.

dēbēo, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. n. to  
owe, be under obligation [de,  
habeo].

dē-cēdo, ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. to  
come down, depart.

dēcem, num. adj. ten [δέκα].

dē-cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3. v.  
a. n. to decide, decree.

dē-certo, āvi, 1. v. n. to fight,  
decide a contest.

dē-cipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a.  
to deceive [capio].

- dē-clivis**, e, *sloping down, downhill* [clivus].
- dēcūrīo**, ōnis, m. *a commander of ten (a cavalry officer); a member of the Senate of a municipal town or colony* [decuria].
- dē-curro**, rri, rsum, 3. v. n. *to run down; w. ad, to have recourse to.*
- dēdītīo**, ōnis, f. *a surrender* [dedo].
- dē-do**, dīdi, dītum, 3. v. a. *to give up, surrender.*
- dē-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead, lead astray; colonos, to settle; milites, to quarter.*
- dē-fendo**, di, sum, 3. v. a. *to defend; iniuriam, to avenge.*
- dē-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to announce, report.*
- dē-fessus**, a, um, part. defetiscor, *tired, exhausted.*
- dē-fīcīo**, fēci, fectum, 3. v. a. n. *to fail, be wanting* [facio].
- dē-fīgo**, xi, xum, 3. v. a. *to fix, plant.*
- dē-fīnīo**, īvi, itum, 4. v. a. *to state exactly, define.*
- dē-fūgīo**, fūgi, 3. v. a. n. *to avoid, shirk.*
- dē-grēdīor**, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to move, change one's position* [gradior].
- dē-īcīo**, īeci, iectum, 3. v. a. *to dislodge; sortes, to cast lots; se, to leap down* [de, iacio].
- dēiectus**, a, um, part. deicio; *as adj. low-lying.*
- dēin** or **dēin**, adv. *afterwards, thereafter.*
- dēinceps**, adv. *in turn.*
- dēindē**, or **dēindē**, adv. *thereafter, nextly.*
- dē-īlbēro**, āvi, 1. v. a. n. *to discuss, deliberate* [libro].
- dē-līgo**, lēgi, lectum, 3. v. a. *to pick out, choose* [lēgo].
- dē-mīnūo**, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to lessen, impair.*
- dēmīssē**, ius, issimē, adv. *humbly.*
- dē-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send down; se, to run down.*
- dē-monstro**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to point out, explain.*
- dē-mōror**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to check, delay.*
- dēnārius**, i, m. *a silver coin, worth about 8½d., containing orig. ten asses, afterwards sixteen* [dēni].
- dē-nēgo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to refuse, deny.*
- dēnīquē**, adv. *lastly.*
- dē-pōno**, pōsui, pōsitum, 3. v. a. *to lay down, take down.*
- dē-porto**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to carry away, convey.*
- dē-posco**, pōposci, 3. v. a. *to demand, ask for.*
- dē-prāvo**, āvi, 1 v. a. *to pervert* [pravus].
- dē-prēcōr**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to appeal against, deprecate.*
- dē-prēhēdo**, and **dēprendo**, dī, sum, 3. v. a. *to seize, take prisoner.*
- dē-prīmo**, pressi, ssum, 3. v. a. *to press down, sink* [premo].
- dē-rectus** (directus), a, um, part. derigo; *adj. straight, steep.*



**de-scendo**, *dī*, *sum*, 3. v. n. *to go down, descend*; w. *ad*, *to have recourse to, acquiesce in* [*scando*].

**de-scisco**, *scīvi*, *itum*, 3. v. n. *incept. to revolt* [*scio*].

**dē-sēro**, *rūi*, *rtum*, 3. v. a. *to desert, be wanting to*.

**dē-sidēro**, *āvi*, 1. v. a. *to miss* [*de*, *sīdus*, *orig. to miss a star from its place in the sky*].

**despērātio**, *ōnis*, f. *despair* [*de-spero*].

**destīno**, *āvi*, 1. v. a. *to fasten, secure*; w. *inf.* *to design*.

**de-stringo**, *inxi*, *ictum*, 3. v. a. *to draw* (*sword*).

**dē-sum**, *fūi*, *esse*, v. n. *irr.* *to be wanting, fail*.

**dē-tergēo**, *rsi*, *rsum*, 2. v. a. *to sweep away*.

**dētrīmentum**, *i*, n. *injury, loss* [*de*, *tero*].

**dē-vēho**, *xi*, *ctum*, 3. v. a. *to carry down, convey*.

**dē-vincio**, *nxi*, *nectum*, 4. v. a. *to bind, lay under obligation*.

**dextra**, *ae*, f. *the right hand* [*dexter*].

**dico**, *xi*, *ctum*, 3. v. a. *to say; sacramentum, to take an oath*.

**dies**, *ēi*, m. also f. *in sing.* *a day; stipendii, pay-day*.

**dif-fēro**, *distūli*, *dilatūm*, *ferre*, v. a. *irr.* *to put off* [*dis*, *apart*].

**dif-fīcīlis**, *e*, *difficult* [*dis*, *facilis*].

**dif-fīcultas**, *ātis*, f. *difficulty*.

**diffīcultē**, *adv.* *with difficulty*.

**dif-fīdo**, *fīsus*, 3. v. n. *semi-dep.* *to distrust* [*dis*].

**dignitas**, *ātis*, f. *worthiness, dignity*.

**dignus**, *a, um*, *worthy*.

**dī-grēdīor**, *gressus*, 3. v. *dep.* *to depart* [*dis*, *gradior*].

**dīlectus**, *ūs*, m. *a conscription, levy of troops* [*diligo*].

**dīlīgētia**, *ae*, f. *carefulness, [diligens]*.

**dīlīgo**, *lexi*, *lectum*, 3. v. a. *to esteem highly, love* [*dis*, *lēgo*].

**dī-mīco**, *āvi*, 1. v. n. *to fight* [*mico*, *to brandish*].

**dī-mīdius**, *a, um*, *half* [*medius*].

**dī-mitto**, *mīsi*, *missum*, 3. v. a. *to dismiss, let slip, waive*.

**dīr-īmo**, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3. v. a. *to separate, break off* [*dis*, *emo*].

**dī-rīpiō**, *ūi*, *reptum*, 3. v. a. *to ravage, plunder* [*rapio*].

**dis-cēdo**, *ssi*, *ssum*, 3. v. n. *to depart, withdraw, come off*.

**dis-cepto**, *āvi*, 1. v. n. *to dispute* [*capto*].

**dis-cessus**, *ūs*, m. *a departure* [*discedo*].

**di-spergo**, *si*, *sum*, 3. v. a. *to scatter, disperse* [*spargo*].

**dis-pōno**, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, 3. v. a. *to set in different places, station*.

**dispūtātio**, *ōnis*, f. *a discussion*.

**dis-pūto**, *āvi*, 1. v. a. *to discuss, dispute*.

**dissensio**, *ōnis*, f. *strife, discord*

- dis-sentiō**, nsi, nsum, 4. v. n. *to disagree.*  
**dis-simūlo**, āvi, 1. v. a. n. *to disguise the truth, dissemble.*  
**dis-sipo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to scatter, disperse.*  
**dis-solvo**, vi, sōlūtum, 3. v. a. *to pay (to various people).*  
**di-sto**, āre, 1. v. n. def. *to be distant.*  
**dis-trāho**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to put off, delay.*  
**dis-tribūo**, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to divide, distribute.*  
**dis-turbo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to break up.*  
**diū**, adv. *for a long time [dies].*  
**diūturnitas**, ātis, f. *long duration, length.*  
**di-versus**, a, um, part. *diverto*; adj. *in different directions.*  
**di-vido**, visi, vīsum, 3. v. a. *to divide, separate [root of video].*  
**di-vinus**, a, um, *divine [divus].*  
**di-vulgo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to make commonly known, publish.*  
**do**, dēdi, dātum, 1. v. a. *to give.*  
**dōcēo**, cūi, ctum, 2. v. a. *to instruct, inform.*  
**dōlēo**, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. n. *to grieve, be indignant, express indignation.*  
**dōlor**, ōris, m. *pain, grief, indignation.*  
**dōmicīlium**, i, n. *a residence, [domus].*  
**dōminātus**, ūs, m. *absolute rule.*  
**dōmīnus**, i, m. *a master, lord.*  
**dōmus**, ūs, f. *a house; domum ad aliquem, to someone's house.*  
**dūbīto**, āvi, 1. v. n. *to hesitate.*  
**dūbius**, a, um, *doubtful, wavering.*  
**dūcenti**, ae, a, num. adj. *two hundred [duo, centum].*  
**dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead, to carry, construct; to prolong [dux].*  
**ductus**, ūs, m. in abl. sing. *command, leadership.*  
**dum**, conj. *while, until.*  
**dūo**, ae, o, num. adj. *two.*  
**dūōdēcim**, num. adj. *twelve.*  
**dūō-dēcīmus**, a, um, ord. num. adj. *twelfth.*  
**dūplex**, icis, adj. *double, two-fold [duo, plico].*  
**dūrē**, ius, issimē, adv. *harshly.*  
**dūrus**, a, um, *hard, harsh.*  
**dūumvirī**, ōrum, m. *the two supreme magistrates in Italian towns [duo, vir].*  
**dux**, dūcis, m. *a leader, general.*  
**e**, see ex.  
**ēā** (sc. viā), adv. *by that way, there [is].*  
**ē-dīco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to proclaim.*  
**ē-dītus**, a, um, part. *ēdo*; adj. *high, elevated.*  
**ē-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead out.*  
**ef-fēro**, extūli, ēlātum, efferre, v. a. irr. *to carry away; to extol [ex].*

- ef-fīciō**, fēci, fectum, 3. v. a. *to make, complete, effect* [ex, facio].  
**ef-fūgiō**, fūgi, 3. v. a. n. *to escape (from)*.  
**ē-grēdiōr**, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to go out, sally forth* [gradior].  
**ē-īciō**, eīeci, eiectum, 3. v. a. *to drive out, expel* [iacio].  
**ēius-mōdī**, of that kind [is, modus].  
**ē-lātus**, a, um, part. effero.  
**ē-lectus**, a, um, part. eligo.  
**ē-līgo**, lēgi, lectum, 3. v. a. *to pick out, choose* [lego].  
**ē-lūdo**, si, sum, 3. v. a. *to baffle*.  
**ē-minēō**, ūi, 2. v. n. *to stand out, project* [maneo].  
**ē-mīnus**, adv. *at a distance, opp. comminus* [manus].  
**ē-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send out, let out*.  
**ēnim**, conj. *for*.  
**ēō**, īvi or īi, ītum, 4. v. n. *to go*.  
**ēō**, adv. *thither, to that place* [is].  
**ēōdem**, adv. *to the same place* [idem].  
**ēques**, ītis, m. *a horseman; a (Roman) knight; pl. cavalry*.  
**ēquester**, tris, tre, *belonging to knights or cavalry; ordo, the equestrian order*.  
**ēquītātus**, ūs, m. *cavalry; pl. troops of horse*.  
**ēqus**, i, m. *a horse*.  
**ergā**, prep. w. acc. *towards*.  
**ē-rīgo**, rexi, rectum, 3. v. a. *to raise, set up* [regō].  
**ē-rīpiō**, ūi, reptum, 3. v. a. *to snatch or take away* [rapio].  
**ē-rumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, 3. v. n. *to break out, sally*.  
**ēruptiō**, ōnis, f. *a sally*.  
**et**, conj. *and; et... et, both... and*.  
**ētiam**, conj. *even, also* [eti = et].  
**et-si**, conj. *although, see note on 67, l. 15*.  
**ēventus**, ūs, m. *a result, issue* [e-venio].  
**ēvōcātus**, i, m. *a soldier of the reserve* [part. evoco].  
**ē-vōco**, āvi, l. v. a. *to summon forth; to call out (reserves)*.  
**ex** or **e**, prep. w. abl. *from, out of; according to; of time, after*.  
**ex-aedīfīco**, āvi, l. v. a. *to build entirely* [aedes, facio].  
**ex-aequo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to equalise, put on the same level* [aequus].  
**ex-āgīto**, āvi, l. v. a. freq. *to assail violently*.  
**ex-audīo**, īvi, ītum, 4. v. a. *to hear*.  
**ex-cēdo**, ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. *to go out, quit*.  
**ex-celsus**, a, um, *very high, lofty* [part. excello].  
**ex-cīpiō**, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. *to pick up; await, follow directly* [capiro].  
**ex-cīto**, āvi, l. v. a. freq. *to excite, arouse; to erect* [cieo].  
**excūsātiō**, ōnis, f. *an excuse* [ex-cūso, causa].  
**exemplum**, i, n. *an example, precedent* [eximo].

- ex-ĕo**, ĭvi or ĭi, ĭtum, 4. v. n. *to go out, march out.*  
**ex-ercĕo**, ūi, ĭtum, 2. v. a. *to employ, exercise* [arceo].  
**exercĭto**, āvi, 1. v. a. freq. *to train, practise.*  
**exercĭtus**, ūs, m. *an army.*  
**ex-ĭgo**, ĕgi, actum, 3. v. a. *to demand, exact* [ago].  
**exĭgŭus**, a, um, *small, scanty* [exigo].  
**exĭmĭus**, a, um, *excessive* [eximo].  
**ex-ĭnānio**, ĭvi, ĭtum, 4. v. a. *to drain, exhaust* [inanis].  
**existĭmātio**, ōnis, f. *opinion, reputation.*  
**ex-istĭmo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to consider, think* [aestimo].  
**exĭtus**, ūs, m. *a going out, escape* [ex-eo].  
**ex-pĕdio**, ĭvi, ĭtum, 4. v. a. *to make ready; free from difficulties* [pes].  
**expĕditus**, a, um, part. *expedio*; adj. *lightly equipped* (without baggage).  
**ex-pello**, pŭli, pulsum, 3. v. a. *to drive out.*  
**ex-pĕrior**, pertus, 4. v. dep. *to try, make trial of* [peritus].  
**ex-pĕto**, ĭvi, ĭtum, 3. v. a. *to desire, seek after.*  
**ex-pĭo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to atone for.*  
**ex-plĕo**, ĕvi, ĕtum, 2. v. a. *to fill, occupy* [ple-nus].  
**explĕĭtus**, a, um, *easy, free from difficulties* [part. explico].  
**ex-plĭco**, āvi or ūi, ātum or ĭtum, 1. v. a. *to unfold, develop.*  
**explŕator**, ōris, m. *a scout; pl. reconnoitring parties.*  
**ex-plŕo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to view, reconnoitre.*  
**ex-pŕo**, pŕo, pŕo, 3. v. a. *to disembark; to set forth.*  
**ex-sisto**, stĭti, stĭtum, 3. v. n. *to arise.*  
**exspectātio**, ōnis, f. *expectation.*  
**ex-specto**, āvi, 1. v. a. n. *to await, wait.*  
**ex-stinguo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to abolish, make an end of.*  
**ex-sto**, 1. v. n. def. *to stand out, project.*  
**ex-terreo**, ūi, ĭtum, 2. v. a. *to dismay; usu. in part. pass.*  
**ex-torquĕo**, rsi, rtum, 2. v. a. *to wrest away.*  
**extrā**, prep. w. acc. *outside of.*  
**ex-trāho**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to drag out.*  
**extrā-ordinārius**, a, um, *out of the way, extraordinary* [ordo].  
**extrĕmus**, a, um, sup. of *exterus*, *the last, hindmost.*  
**fāber**, bri, m. *an engineer; pl. fabri, brum; the engineers, a corps in the Roman army.*  
**fācilĕ**, ĭus, illĭmĕ, adv. *easily.*  
**fācilis**, e, *easy* [facio].  
**fācio**, fĕci, factum, 3. v. a. *to do, make; proelia, to fight.*  
**factum**, i, n. *a deed* [facio].  
**factio**, ōnis, f. *a clique, political faction.*  
**fācultas**, ātis, f. *an opportunity; pl. means, resources* [facilis].

- falsō**, adv. *falsely*.  
**falsus**, a, um, part. fallo; adj. *false*.  
**fāma**, ae, f. *report, rumour* [fari].  
**fāmilla**, ae, f. *a household, establishment of slaves* [famulus].  
**fāmiliāris**, e, *intimate*; usu. subst. m. *an intimate friend*.  
**fānum**, i, n. *a shrine, temple* [fari].  
**fastigium**, i, n. *an incline, slope*.  
**fauces**, ūm, f. pl. *the throat; mouth* (of a harbour).  
**fāvō**, fāvi, fautum, 2. v. n. *to favour*.  
**fēliciter**, cius, cissimē, adv. *successfully* [felix].  
**fēra**, ae, f. *a wild beast* [θηρ].  
**fērē**, adv. *almost, about*.  
**fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to bear, carry off, lead, tend*; ad populum, *to propose, carry a proposal*.  
**ferreus**, a, um, *of iron* [fer-rum].  
**fīdes**, ēi, f. *good faith, loyalty, protection; a pledge*.  
**fīdūcia**, ae, f. *confidence* [fido].  
**fillus**, i, m. *a son*.  
**fringo**, nxi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to invent, feign*.  
**fīnis**, is, m. and f. *an end, limit*; pl. *territory*.  
**fīnītīmus**, a, um, *bordering, adjoining*.  
**fīo**, factus, fīeri, v. semi-dep. pass. of facio, *to become, be made, effected*.  
**fīrmus**, a, um, *strong, secure*.  
**flāgīto**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to demand, clamour for*.  
**flēo**, ēvi, ētum, 2. v. n. *to weep*; part. flens, tis, *in tears*.  
**fluctus**, ūs, m. *a wave* [fluo].  
**flūmen**, īnis, n. *a river* [id.].  
**fōrē**, inf. fut. of sum; see note on 9, l. 29.  
**fortis**, e, *strong, brave*.  
**fortiter**, ūs, issimē, adv. *bravely*.  
**fortūna**, ae, f. *luck, fortune*.  
**fōrum**, i, n. *a market place*; esp. *the Forum*, or place of public resort in Rome.  
**fossa**, ae, f. *a ditch, trench* [fōdio].  
**frēquens**, ntis, adj. usu. pl. *in large numbers*.  
**frētum**, i, n. *a strait*; esp. *the straits of Messina*.  
**frons**, tis, f. *the forehead, front*; a fronte, *in front*.  
**fructus**, ūs, m. *fruit, reward* [fruor].  
**frūmentārius**, a, um, *belonging to corn*; res, *the corn supply, commissariat*.  
**frūmentor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to get corn*.  
**frūmentum**, i, n. *corn, grain* [fruges].  
**frustrā**, adv. *in vain* [fraus].  
**fūga**, ae, f. *flight*.  
**fūgiens**, ntis, part. fugio; w. gen. *apt to shun, shirk*.  
**fūgiō**, fūgi, fūgitum, 3. v. a. n. *to fly, fly from, shun*.  
**funda**, ae, f. *a sling* [σφενδόνη].  
**funditor**, ōris, m. *a slinger*.  
**fūtūrus**, a, um, fut. part. sum.

- gēnus, ěris, n. *a kind, class, race* [gigno].
- gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3. v. a. *to carry on, wage, administer.*
- glādiātor, ōris, m. *a trained swordsman, gladiator* (usu. slaves).
- glādīus, i, m. *a sword.*
- glōrior, ātus, l. v. dep. *to boast* [gloria].
- grātīa, ae, f. *favour, gratitude*; pl. *thanks*; in gratiam redire, *to be reconciled* [gratus].
- grātūlātiō, ōnis, f. *congratulation.*
- grātūlor, ātus, l. v. dep. *to congratulate.*
- grāvis, e, *heavy, weighty, severe.*
- grāvītas, ātis, f. *weight.*
- grāvīter, ius, issimē, adv. *heavily, severely.*
- grāvōr, ātus, l. v. dep. *to be reluctant.*
- gūbernātor, ōris, m. *a steersman* [gubernō].
- hābĕo, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. *to have, hold, regard*; male, *to annoy.*
- hāc, adv. *by this way* [hic].
- harpāgo, ōnis, m. *a grappling-hook* [ἀπράγη].
- hastātus, a, um, *armed with spears*; subst. hastāti, orum, m. *the men of the third manipule of each cohort*; hastatus, i, m. (sc. ordo) *a century of hastati* [hasta].
- hīberna, ōrum, n. *winter-quarters*; sc. castra [hiems].
- hic, haec, hoc, demonstr. pron. *this, this man, etc.*
- hīems, ěmis, f. *winter* [χιών].
- hīēmo, āvi, l. v. n. *to winter.*
- hinc, adv. *hence* [hic].
- hōmo, īnis, m. *a man.*
- hōnestus, a, um, *high-born, honourable.*
- hōnor, ōris, m. *honour, distinction, office.*
- hōra, ae, f. *an hour* [ώρα].
- hortor, ātus, l. v. dep. *to exhort.*
- hospes, ītis, m. *a host*; a guest.
- HS., abbrev. for sestertius, see note on 23, l. 14.
- hūc, adv. *hither, to this point*; also = his, *to these, or ad hoc, in addition* [hic].
- hūmānus, a, um, *human* [homo].
- hūmĕrus, i, m. *a shoulder.*
- hūmīdus, a, um, *damp, unseasoned.*
- hūmīlītas, ātis, f. *humiliation, abasement* [humilis].
- iācĭo, iĕci, iactum, 3. v. a. *to throw, throw up or in.*
- iactūra, ae, f. *loss*; facere iacturam, *to incur loss* [iacio].
- iam, adv. *now, already, by this time.*
- Iānūārius, a, um, with mensis, or as subst. m. *January.*
- ībī, adv. *there*; see note on 26, l. 3 [is].

- idcirco**, adv. *on that account* [circa].
- Idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, pron. *the same* [is-dem].
- Idōneus**, a, um, *suitable, adapted*.
- Idus**, ūm, f. pl. *the Ides*, or 15th day of March, May, July, and October; the 13th of other months.
- ignōmīnia**, ac, f. *disgrace, ignominy* [in, gnomen].
- ignōro**, avi, l. v. a. *to be ignorant of* [in, gnosco].
- illē**, a, ud, demonstr. pron. *that; he, she, it*.
- im-mīnēo**, ūi, 2. v. n. *to be close at hand* [in, maneo].
- im-pār**, āris, adj. *unequal*.
- im-pārātus**, a, um, *unprepared*.
- impēdimentum**, i, n. *an encumbrance; pl. baggage*.
- im-pēdiō**, īvi, itum, 4. v. a. *to hinder, obstruct* (w. ad and gerund); part. pass. *impeditus, full of difficulties* [pes].
- im-pello**, pūli, pulsum, 3. v. a. *to drive on, impel*.
- impērātor**, ōris, m. *a commander-in-chief*.
- im-pērītus**, a, um, *ignorant, inexperienced*.
- impērīum**, i, n., *a command; esp. military command, held by a Roman consul, proconsul, praetor, etc.; see note on 31, l. 1*.
- impēro**, āvi, l. v. a. n. *to order, command*.
- im-pētro**, āvi, l. v. a. *to obtain a request* [patro].
- impētus**, ūs, m. *a charge, attack* [in, peto].
- im-plōro**, āvi, l. v. a. *to beseech*.
- im-pōno**, pōsui, pōsitum, 3. v. a. *to put on, embark*.
- im-prīmis**, adv. *especially* [in, primus].
- im-prōbo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to disapprove*.
- im-prōviso**, adv. *unexpectedly* [pro, video].
- im-prūdēns**, ntis, *not expecting, unprepared*.
- in**, prep. w. acc. *into, against, to, for, with a view to; w. abl. in, on, upon, in the case of*.
- in-aedīfīco**, āvi, l. v. a. *to barricade* [aedes, facio].
- in-aequo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to level, cover over* [aequus].
- incendīum**, i, n. *a fire, conflagration* [incendo].
- in-cīdo**, di, 3. v. n., w. in and acc. *to fall in with* [cado].
- in-cīpiō**, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. n. *to begin* [capiō].
- in-cīto**, āvi, l. v. a. freq. *to spur on, incite* [cicio].
- in-clīno**, āvi, l. v. a. n. *to turn, change* [κλίω].
- in-cōlo**, ūi, 3. v. a. *to inhabit*.
- in-cōlūmis**, e, *safe, unharmed*.
- in-commōdum**, i, n. *a disaster, penalty*.
- in-consultē**, adv. *rashly* [consulto].
- in-cursus**, ūs, m. *a charge, attack*.
- indē**, adv. *thence, after that* [is].

- indūtīae, ārum, f. a *truce, armistice*.
- īn-ēo, īvi or īi, ītum, 4. v. a. *to enter, enter on, adopt*.
- īn-ermis, e, *unarmed* [arma].
- īn-fāmīa, ae, f. a *scandal* [fama].
- īn-fectus, a, um, *undone* [facio].
- īn-fērīor, us, comp. adj. *lower; inferior* [infra].
- īn-fēro, tūli, illātum, ferre, v. a. *irr. to bring in, introduce; bellum, to take the offensive*.
- īn-fīmūs, a, um, sup. adj. *lowest* [infra].
- īn-fīnītē, adv. *without limitation* [finio].
- īn-fīrmūs, a, um, *weak*.
- īnfrā, prep. w. acc. *under; adv. below*.
- īn-grāvesco, 3. v. n. insep. *to grow heavy, be intensified* [gravis].
- īn-grēdīor, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to enter* [gradior].
- īn-gressus, ūs, m. a *going forward, advance*.
- īn-īciō, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. *to throw on or into* [iacio].
- īnīmīcītīa, ae, f. *unfriendliness, a feud*.
- īn-īmīcus, i, m. a *(personal) enemy* [amicus].
- īnīquītas, ātis, f. *unevenness, unfavourableness*.
- īn-īquūs, a, um, *uneven, unfavourable* [aequus].
- īn-ītiūm, i, n. a *beginning* [eo].
- īn-īungo, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to join, attach to; impose on*.
- īnīūrīa, ae, f. a *wrong* [ius].
- īnōpīa, ae, f. *want, scarcity* [in-ops].
- īn-ōpīnans, ntis, adj. *unaware* [opinor].
- īn-sēquor, sēcūtus, 3. v. dep. *to follow, pursue*.
- īnsōlenter, adv. *insolently* [insolens].
- īnsōlentīa, ae, f. *insolence, arrogance*.
- īn-stītūo, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to set up, establish; begin* [statuo].
- īn-sto, stīti, l. v. n. *to press on*.
- īn-strūo, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to furnish, draw up*.
- īn-suētus, a, um, *unaccustomed* [suesco].
- īnsūla, ae, f. *an island*.
- īntēger, gra, grum, *untouched, uninjured, fresh* [tag, tango].
- īn-tēgo, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to cover*.
- īntel-lēgo, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to understand, perceive* [inter].
- īnter, prep. w. acc. *between, among; inter se, one another*.
- īnter-cēdo, ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. *to come between, intervene; to happen; to veto*.
- īnter-cessīo, ōnis, f. a *veto*.
- īnter-cīpiō, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. *to cut off, intercept* [capio].
- īnter-clūdo, si, sum, 3. v. a. *to shut off, separate* [claudio].
- īnter-dīū, adv. *by day* [dies].
- īntēr-ēā, adv. *meanwhile*.
- īntēr-ēo, īvi or īi, ītum, 4. v. n. *to be lost, perish*.



- intēr-est**, fūit, esse, v. impers.  
w. gen. *it is for the advantage of.*
- inter-ficiō**, fēci, fectum, v. a.  
*to kill* [facio].
- intēr-īciō**, iēcī, iectum, 3. v.  
a. *to place between, inter-*  
*perse* [iacio].
- intērim**, adv. *meanwhile.*
- inter-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3.  
v. a. *to leave between, leave*  
*free, discontinue.*
- inter-nuntiūs**, i, m. *a messen-*  
*ger, go-between.*
- inter-pello**, āvi, l. v. a. *to in-*  
*terrupt.*
- inter-pōno**, pōsūi, pōsītum, 3.  
v. a. *to interpose.*
- inter-rōgo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to ques-*  
*tion.*
- inter-rumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, 3.  
v. a. *to break, break down,*  
*interrupt.*
- inter-vallum**, i, n. *a space*  
*between, interval.*
- intrā**, prep. w. acc. *within.*
- intro**, āvi, l. v. a. *to enter, go*  
*among.*
- intrō-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a.  
*to lead in, introduce.*
- intrō-itus**, ūs, m. *an entrance*  
[eo].
- in-vādo**, si, sum, 3. v. a. n. *to*  
*attack, arise.*
- in-vēniō**, vēni, ventum, 4. v.  
a. *to come upon, find.*
- in-vētērasco**, āvi, 3. v. n.  
insep. *to become settled,*  
*established* [vetus].
- invidiā**, ae, f. *envy, odium*  
[in-video].
- invito**, āvi, l. v. a. *to invite,*  
*'treat.'*
- invitus**, a, um, *unwilling, re-*  
*luctant.*
- in-volvo**, vi, vōlūtum, 3. v. a.  
*to roll in.*
- ipsē**, a, um, gen. ius,  
demonstr. pron. *self; my-*  
*self, himself, etc.*
- Irācundiā**, ae, f. *anger.*
- Irascor**, irātus, 3. v. dep. *to*  
*be angry* [ira].
- ir-rumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, 3. v.  
a. *to break into* [in].
- is**, ēa, id, gen. eius, demonstr.  
pron. *he, she, it, that.*
- Itā**, adv. *so, thus; ita...ut, in*  
*such a way that, see note on*  
*26, l. 8.*
- Itāquē**, conj. *and so, there-*  
*fore.*
- Item**, conj. *also, likewise.*
- īter**, itinēris, n. *a road, a*  
*journey, march; habere, to*  
*be on one's way* [ire].
- iūbēo**, iussi, iussum, 2. v. a.  
*to order, command.*
- iūcundus**, a, um, *pleasant,*  
*agreeable* [iuvo].
- iūdiciūm**, i, n. *a judgment,*  
*decision; pl. the law-courts.*
- iūdīco**, āvi, l. v. a. *to judge,*  
*consider* [iudex; ius, dico].
- iūgērum**, i, n. *a measure of*  
*land, about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an acre.*
- iūgum**, i, n. *a yoke; a hill*  
*top* [iungo].
- Iūlius**, a, um, *Julian; lex, a*  
*law passed by C. Julius*  
*Caesar in his consulship.*
- iūmentum**, i, m. *a beast of*  
*burden* [iuvo].
- iungo**, nxi, nctum, 3. v. a. *to*  
*join; fasten together.*
- iūro**, āvi, l. v. a. n. *to swear.*

- iūs, iūris, n. *right, law*; in ius ire, *to go to law, have a case tried.*
- ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandi, n. *an oath.*
- iustītia, ae, f. *justice.*
- iustus, a, um, *just*; iter, *a regular day's march.*
- iūvo, iūvi, iūtum, l. v. a. *to help, assist.*
- iuxtā, prep. w. acc. *near, hard by* [iungo].
- L., abbrev. for Lucius, a Roman (first) name.
- lābor, ōris, m. *labour, trouble.*
- lābōro, āvi, l. v. n. *to toil, be in difficulties.*
- lācesso, īvi, itum, 3. v. a. *to harass, provoke.*
- laetītia, ae, f. *gladness, rejoicing.*
- laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful.*
- languīdus, a, um, *faint, languid.*
- largītio, ōnis, f. *a giving freely, distribution of money.*
- lātītūdo, īnis, f. *width, breadth* [lātus].
- lātus, ēris, n. *a side, flank.*
- lātus, a, um, *wide, broad.*
- laudo, āvi, l. v. a. *to praise.*
- laus, dis, f. *praise, glory.*
- lēgātio, ōnis, f. *a commission, embassy* [tego].
- lēgātus, i, m. *an ambassador, envoy*; *a high officer, see* *Introductio. ii. § 6.*
- lēgio, ōnis, f. *a division of the Roman army, a legion, see* *Introductio. ii. § 1.*
- lēgiōnārius, a, um, *belonging to a legion*; subst. m. pl. *legionaries.*
- lēgītīmus, a, um, *required by law, legal, regular* [lex].
- lēnis, e, *gentle, mild.*
- lēnitas, ātis, f. *mildness, clemency.*
- lēnīter, ius, issīmē, adv. *mildly, feebly.*
- lentē, adv. *slowly* [lentus].
- lēvis, e, *light, not heavy.*
- lēvo, āvi, l. v. a. *to lighten.*
- lībēns, entis, part. libet; adj. *willing.*
- līber, ēra, ērum, *free.*
- lībērē, adv. *freely.*
- lībēri, ōrum, m. *children.*
- lībēro, āvi, l. v. a. *to set free, liberate.*
- lībertas, ātis, f. *freedom.*
- līcentia, ae, f. *want of restraint, license.*
- līcet, ūit, itum, v. impers. *it is allowed, lawful.*
- līctor, ōris, m. *a lictor, official attendant on consuls and praetors.*
- līgnum, i, n. *wood*; pl. *firewood.*
- līnter, tris, f. *a light boat, wherry.*
- lītērae, ārum, f. *a letter, despatch.*
- lītus, ōris, n. *a coast, shore.*
- lōcus, i, m. *a place*; abl. loco with gen. *in the place of*; *as.*
- longē, ius, issīmē, adv. *far off.*
- longinquitas, ātis, f. *length, duration.*
- longinquus, a, um, *distant.*
- longītūdo, īnis, f. *length.*
- longus, a, um, *long, tedious.*

**lōquor, lōcūtus, 3. v. dep. to speak.**

**lūcesco, luxi, 3. v. n. incept. to grow light [lux].**

**lūdus, i, m. a game; sc. gladiatorius, a school of gladiators.**

**lux, lūcis, f. light; prima, dawn.**

**M.,** abbrev. for Marcus, a Roman (first) name.

**māgis, comp. adv. more [magnus].**

**māgistrātus, ūs, m. a magistrate.**

**magnitūdo, ĩnis, f. greatness, large volume.**

**magnōpĕrĕ, for magno opere, adv. greatly.**

**magnus, a, um, great; iter, a forced march.**

**mālĕ, adv. badly; habere, to annoy [malus].**

**mālĕficiūm, i, n. mischief, evil-doing [male, facio].**

**mālo, lūi, malle, v. a. irr. to wish rather, prefer [magis, volo].**

**mālum, i, n. an evil, disadvantage.**

**mandātum, i, n. a message [part. mando].**

**mando, āvi, l. v. a. to charge, entrust.**

**mānĕo, nsi, nsum, 2. v. a. n. to await; remain.**

**mānĭpŭlus, i, m. a division of the Roman army, a manipule [manus, pleo].**

**mānus, ūs, f. a hand; ferrea, a grappling iron.**

**mārĕ, is, n. the sea.**

**mātĕriā, ae, f. timber.**

**mātūrĕ, ĩus, issĭmĕ, adv. soon, early.**

**mātūrĭtas, ātis, f. ripeness [maturus].**

**mātŭro, āvi, l. v. a. n. to hasten.**

**maxĭmĕ, sup. adv. most, chiefly [magnus].**

**mĕdiŭs, a, um, middle; spatium, the centre.**

**mĕmōr, ōris, adj. mindful.**

**mĕmōriā, ae, f. memory.**

**mendāciūm, i, n. a lie [mendax].**

**mens, tis, f. mind, intellect.**

**mensis, is, m. a month.**

**mĕrĕor, ĩtus, 2. v. dep. to deserve; bene de aliquo, to do good service to.**

**merx, cis, f., usu. pl. goods, wares.**

**mĕtus, ūs, m. fear.**

**mĭles, ĩtis, m. a soldier.**

**mĭliā, ĩum, n. (pl. of mille) thousands; sc. passuum, miles (of 1000 paces).**

**mĭlĭtāris, e, of soldiers; res, warfare.**

**millĕ, num, adj. indecl. in sing. a thousand.**

**mĭnae, ārum, f. threats.**

**mĭnimus, a, um, sup. of parvus, least.**

**mĭnŭo, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. to lessen.**

**mĭnus, adv. less [minor].**

**mĭsĕrātĭo, ōnis, f. an appeal to pity [miseror, miser].**

**mĭsĕricordiā, ae, f. pity, compassion [miser, cor].**

**missĭo, ōnis, f. discharge (of soldiers).**

mitto, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send, dismiss, discharge, utter.*  
 mōdīus, i, m. *a measure of corn, about a peck.*  
 mōdō, adv. *only, but* [orig. abl. of modus].  
 mōdus, i, m. *a way, manner.*  
 moeniā, ūm, n. *walls, ramparts.*  
 mōles, is, f. *a mass of stone, a mole.*  
 mōmentum, i, n. *an impulse* [moveo].  
 mōnēo, ūi, ūtum, 2. v. a. *to warn, remind, inform.*  
 mons, ntis, m. *a mountain, hill.*  
 montānus, a, um, *dwelling in mountains; subst. m. a mountaineer.*  
 montūōsus, a, um, *mountainous* [mons].  
 mōra, ae, f. *a delay.*  
 mōror, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to delay; hinder, hamper.*  
 mōs, mōris, m. *custom, usage; pl. character.*  
 mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, 2. v. a. *to move; affect, influence; castra, to break up.*  
 multītūdo, ūnis, f. *a great number, multitude* [multus].  
 multum, adv. *much, greatly.*  
 multus, a, um, *much; pl. many.*  
 mūnī-ceps, ūpis, m. *a townsman, fellow-townsmen* [munia, capio].  
 mūnī-cipīum, i, n. *a free town, Italian borough.*  
 mūniō, ūvi, ūtum, 4. v. a. *to fortify* [moenia].

mūnītīo, ōnis, f. *a defence, outwork.*  
 mūnītus, a, um, part. munio; adj. *strongly fortified.*  
 mūnus, ūris, n. *a duty, office.*  
 mūrus, i, m. *a wall, city wall.*  
 mūto, āvi, 1. v. a. *to change.*  
 mūtūus, a, um, *mutual; pecunia, borrowed money, a loan.*

N, abbrev. for Numerius, a Roman (first) name.  
 nanciscor, nactus, 3. v. dep. *to take, obtain.*  
 nātūra, ae, f. *nature* [nascor].  
 nāvīgīum, i, n. *a vessel, boat* [navis, ago].  
 nāvis, is, f. *a vessel, ship; longa, a war ship; oneraria, a merchantman.*  
 nē, adv. and conj. *lest, that not; ne ... quidem, not even.*  
 -nē interrog. particle, *whether* (in indirect questions).  
 nēc, see neque.  
 nēcēssāriō, adv. *unavoidably, of necessity.*  
 nēcēssārius, a, um, *necessary; intimate; subst. m. an intimate friend.*  
 nēcēssē, ū. adj. indecl. *unavoidable; habere, to be compelled.*  
 nēcēssītūdo, ūnis, f. *intimacy, relationship.*  
 nēgo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to deny, refuse.*  
 nēgōtīum, i, n. *a business; difficulty* [nec, otium].  
 nēmō, acc. nēmīnem (gen. nullius), pron. *no one* [ne, homo].

- nēquē or nēc, conj. *and not, nor*; neque ... neque, *neither ... nor*.
- nēquē-dum, adv. *and not yet* [cf. non-dum].
- nēquīquam, adv. *in vain*.
- neu or nēve, adv. *and that not, nor*.
- neuter, tra, trum, *neither of two* [ne, uter].
- nīhīl, n. indecl. *nothing* [ne, hilum].
- nīmīus, a, um, *excessive* [nimis].
- nīšī, conj. *if not, unless* [ni, si].
- nītor, sus and xus, 3. v. dep. *to strive, endeavour*.
- nix, nīvis, f. *snow* [νίψειν].
- nōbīlis, e, *famous, notable; high-born* [nosco].
- nōcēo, ūi, itum, 2. v. n. *to harm, hurt*.
- noctū, adv. *by night* [nox].
- nocturnus, a, um, *nightly, by night*.
- nōlo, ūi, nolle, v. a. n. *to be unwilling, refuse* [ne, volo].
- nōmen, īnis, n. *a name* [nosco].
- nōmīnātīm, adv. *by name, specially*.
- nōn, adv. *not* [orig. noenum = ne unum].
- non-dum, adv. *not yet*.
- non-gentī, ae, a, num. adj. *nine hundred* [novem, centum].
- non-nullus, a, um, *not none, some*.
- non-numquam, adv. *not never, sometimes*.
- nōnus, a, um, ord. num. adj. *ninth* [novem].
- nosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3. v. a. *incept. to get to know; in perf. to know*.
- noster, tra, trum, pron. adj. *our* [nos].
- nōtītīa, ae, f, *acquaintance* [nosco].
- nōto, āvi, 1. v. a. *to brand* [nota].
- nōtus, a, um, part. nosco, *well-known; subst. m. an acquaintance*.
- nōvem, num. adj. *nine*.
- nōvus, a, um, *new, novel; sup. novissimus, the last, hindmost; agmen, the rear-guard*.
- nox, ctis, f. *night*.
- nūdo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to strip, make bare*.
- nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare*.
- nullus, a, um, *no, none*.
- nūmērus, i, m. *a number, quantity*.
- numquam, adv. *never* [ne, umquam].
- nuncūpo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to name; offer* [nomen, capio].
- nuntīo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to report, announce*.
- nuntīus, i, m. *a messenger, message*.
- ōb-īcīo, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. *to expose, put in the way of* [iacio].
- ob-lātus, a, um, part. offero.
- oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique*.
- obscūrus, a, um, *obscure, unknown*.
- ob-sēcro, āvi, 1. v. a. *to adjure, implore* [sacro].

**obses**, īdis, com. *a hostage* [obsideo].

**ob-sīdēo**, sēdi, sessum, 2. v. a. *to sit down before, beset, besiege* [sedeo].

**obsīdīo**, ōnis, f. *a siege, blockade*.

**ob-strūo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to block up*.

**ob-stringo**, nxi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to bind, fetter*.

**ob-tempēro**, āvi, 1. v. n. *to yield, defer to*.

**ob-tīnēo**, ūi, tentum, 2. v. a. *to hold, command* [teneo].

**obtrectātīo**, ōnis, f. *disparagement* [ob, tracto].

**ob-vēnīo**, vēni, ventum, 4. v. n. *to come to, fall to the lot of*.

**ob-vīam**, adv. *in the way of, to meet*.

**occāsīo**, ōnis, f. *an opportunity*.

**occāsus**, ūs, m. *a setting* [ob, cado].

**occultus**, a, um, part. oculo; adj. *secret, hidden*; in occulto, *out of sight*.

**occūpo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to seize, occupy* [ob, capio].

**oc-curro**, ī, cursum, 3. v. n. *to go to meet, confront* [ob].

**ōcēānus**, ī, m. *the ocean*.

**octāvus**, a, um, card. num. adj. *the eighth*.

**octō**, num. adj. *eight*.

**octōgintā**, num. adj. *eighty*.

**ōcūlus**, ī, m. *an eye*.

**of-fēro**, obtūli, oblātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to offer, present, cause* [ob].

**offīcīna**, ae, f. *a workshop, manufactory* [for opi-ficina; opus, facio].

**offīcīum**, ī, n. *a service, duty, courtesy* [opus, facio].

**ōmitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to give up, abandon* [ob, mitto].

**omnīno**, adv. *altogether, at all* [omnis].

**omnis**, e, *all, every*.

**ōnērārīus**, a, um, *carrying burdens*; *navis*, *a merchantman* [onus].

**ōnus**, ēris, n. *a load, burden*; *oneri esse*, *to be burdensome*.

**ōpem**, īs (no nom.), f. *help, aid*; pl. *opes*, um, *means, resources*.

**ōpēra**, ae, f. *work, service*; *dare operam*, *to take heed, look to it*.

**ōpīnīo**, ōnis, f. *an opinion, expectation*.

**ōportet**, ūit, 2. v. impers. *it behoves, one ought*.

**oppīdānus**, a, um, *belonging to a town*; subst. m. *a townsman*.

**oppīdum**, ī, n. *a town* [ob, pedum = πῆδον].

**op-pōno**, pōsui, pōsītum, 3. v. a. *to set against, pit against*.

**oppōrtūnītas**, ātis, f. *convenience, favourableness*.

**op-pōsītus**, a, um, part. *oppono*; adj. *opposite*.

**op-prīmo**, pressi, pressum, 3. v. a. *to surprise, crush* [premo].

**oppugnātīo**, ōnis, f. *an attack, assault* [ob, pugno].

- optīmē, adv. sup. of bene, *excellently*.
- optīmus, a, um, sup. of bonus, *best, excellent*.
- ōpus, ēris, n. *a work*; pl. *siege works, fortifications*.
- ōrātīo, ōnis, f. *a speech, language* [oro].
- ordo, īnis, m. *a line, rank of soldiers, often = centuria, a century*; ducere ordinem, *to command a company as centurion*; hence, *a centurionship*; an order, class; senatorius, *the senatorial order*.
- ōrior, ortus, 4. v. dep. *to arise*.
- ōro, āvi, 1. v. a. *to pray, entreat*.
- ōs, ōris, n. *a mouth*.
- os-tendo, di, tum, 3. v. a. *to show, declare* [obs].
- ostentātīo, ōnis, f. *display, showing off* [ostento].
- ōtīum, i, n. *ease, leisure, peace*.
- pābūlātīo, ōnis, f. *foraging*.
- pābūlātor, ōris, m. *a forager*.
- pābūlor, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to forage*.
- pābūlum, i, n. *fodder, forage* [pasco].
- pāco, āvi, 1. v. a. *to pacify, subjugate* [pax].
- paenē, adv. *almost*.
- pālam, adv. *openly, publicly*.
- pālūdātus, a, um, *dressed in a general's cloak* (pālūdāmentum).
- pār, pārīs, adj. *equal*.
- pārātus, a, um, part. paro; adj. *ready, prepared*.
- parco, pēperci, parsum, 3. v. n. *to spare*.
- pārens, entis, comm. *a parent* [pario].
- pāro, āvi, 1. v. a. *to prepare, procure, buy*.
- pars, rtis, f. *a part, portion*; in duas partes (ch. 40), *in two directions*; a political party; pl. regions; a part played, a rôle.
- partior, itus, 4. v. dep. *to share, divide*.
- parvus, a, um, *small*.
- passus, ūs, m. *a pace, about 5 ft.*; mille passus, *a (Roman) mile, about 1618 yds*.
- pastor, ōris, m. *a shepherd, herdsman* [pasco].
- pātēo, ūi, 2. v. n. *to be open, extend*.
- pāter, tris, m. *a father*.
- pātienter, adv. *patiently* [patior].
- pātientīa, ae, f. *forbearance, endurance*.
- pātior, passus, 3. v. dep. *to suffer, permit*.
- pātrōnus, i, m. *a patron, protector*.
- pauci, ae, a (sing. v. rare) *few*; n. pl. pauca, *few words*.
- paulātim, adv. *little by little* [paulum].
- paulisper, adv. *for a short time*.
- paulo, adv. *by a little, somewhat*.
- paulum, i, n. *a little*.
- pax, pācis, f. *peace* [paciscor].
- pectus, ōris, n. *the breast*.

- pēcūnīa**, ae, f. *money*; pl. *sums of money* [pecus, cattle being the earliest currency].
- pēcus**, ōris, n. *cattle*.
- pēdēs**, itis, m. *a foot-soldier* [pes].
- pēnēs**, prep. w. acc. *in the hands or power of*.
- per**, prep. w. acc. *through, by*; per se, *by oneself, on one's own responsibility*.
- pēr-āgīto**, āvi, l. v. a. freq. *to harass, infest*.
- pēr-āgo**, ēgi, actum, 3. v. a. *to go through with, complete*.
- per-curro**, i, cursum, 3. v. a. n. *to hasten through, traverse*.
- pēr-ēquīto**, āvi, l. v. a. n. *to ride through or to and fro*.
- per-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to convey, carry word, report*.
- per-fīcīo**, fēcī, fectum, 3. v. a. *to complete, finish* [facio].
- per-fūgīo**, fūgi, 3. v. n. *to desert*.
- per-grātus**, a, um, *very gratifying*.
- pērīclītor**, ātus, l. v. dep. *to try, hazard* [periculum].
- pērīcūlum**, i, n. *a danger, risk*.
- pērītus**, a, um, *experienced, acquainted with*.
- per-lātus**, a, um, part. per-fero.
- per-lēgo**, lēgi, lectum, 3. v. a. *to read through*.
- per-magnus**, a, um, *very great*.
- per-mānēo**, mansi, sum, 2. v. n. *to continue, keep on*.
- per-miscēo**, cūi, mixtum, 2. v. a. *to mix up, confound*.
- per-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to give up, deliver; to admit of*.
- per-mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, 2. v. a. *to move greatly, alarm*.
- pernīcīes**, ēi, f. *destruction, ruin*.
- per-pētīor**, pessus, 3. v. dep. *to endure to the end* [patior].
- per-pētūus**, a, um, *unbroken, continuous* [peto].
- per-rumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, 3. v. a. n. *to break through*.
- per-scrībo**, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. *to write fully*.
- persēvēro**, āvi, l. v. a. n. *to be firm, persevere* [severus].
- per-spīcīo**, spexi, spectrum, 3. v. a. *to examine, look into* [specio].
- per-suādēo**, si, sum, 2. v. a. n. *to persuade, induce*.
- per-terrītus**, a, um, part. per-terrēo, *dismayed*.
- pertīnācīa**, ae, f. *obstinacy* [per, tenax].
- per-tīnēo**, ūi, 2. v. n. *to extend, reach*; w. ad and gerund, *to tend to* [teneo].
- per-turbo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to throw into confusion, alarm*.
- pēr-venīo**, vēni, ventum, 4. v. n. *to make one's way, reach* (w. ad).
- pes**, pēdis, m. *a foot, a measure of length*.
- pētītīo**, ōnis, f. *a candidature, canvass* [peto].



**pěto**, *ivi*, *itum*, 3. v. a. *to seek, aim at, go to.*

**pignus**, *oris*, n. *a pledge, guarantee.*

**pilum**, i, n. *a javelin, the missile weapon of Roman legionaries.*

**pilus**, i, m. *a division of triarii in the legion; usu. with primus; see Introd. ii. § 2.*

**plānitiā**, ae, and -es, *ei*, f. *a level place, plain* [planus].

**plātēa**, ae, f. *a broad way, street* [πλατεία].

**plebs**, *plēbis*, f. *the populace, commons.*

**plēnus**, a, um, *full* [pleo].

**plērique**, aequē, *aque* (sing. rare), *very many, the most.*

**plūres**, a, gen. *ium*, *more* (comp. of multus).

**plūrimus**, a, um, *most, very much; pl. very many* (sup. of multus).

**plūtēus**, i, m. *a penthouse, mantlet, breastwork.*

**pollēo**, 2. v. n. *to be powerful.*

**pollicēor**, *itus*, 2. v. dep. *to promise* [por, liceor].

**pollicitātiō**, onis, f. *a promising.*

**pōno**, *pōtūi*, *pōsitum*, 3. v. a. *to place, pitch.*

**pons**, *ntis*, m. *a bridge.*

**pontifex**, *icis*, m. *a high priest, pontiff* [pons, facio].

**pōpūlus**, i, m. *a people; Romanus, the Roman people.*

**porta**, ae, f. *a gate, city-gate.*

**porto**, *āvi*, l. v. a. *to carry.*

**portus**, *ūs*, m. *a harbour, port.*

**possessio**, *ōnis*, f. *a holding, landed property* [posideo].

**possum**, *pōtūi*, *posse*, v. n. irr. *to be able* [potis, sum].

**post**, prep. w. acc. *after, behind; adv. afterwards.*

**post-ēā**, adv. *afterwards.*

**postērītas**, *ātis*, f. *future time, posterity* [posterus].

**postērus**, a, um, *future, ensuing; subst. n. posterum* (sc. tempus), *the future* [post].

**postrēmo**, adv. *at last* [postremus sup. of posterus].

**postrīdīē**, adv. *next day* [posterus, dies].

**postūlatum**, i, n. *a demand.*

**postūlo**, *āvi*, l. v. a. *to demand, stipulate.*

**pōtens**, *ntis*, part. *possum; adj. powerful.*

**pōtentia**, ae, f. *power, not by right of office.*

**pōtestas**, *ātis*, f. *power, usu. official or constitutional; facere alicui potestatem, to give one leave.*

**pōtior**, *itus*, 4. v. dep. w. abl. *to take possession of, obtain* [potis].

**pōtior**, us, comp. adj. *preferable, better* [id.].

**prae**, prep. w. abl. *before, in front of.*

**prae-ācūtus**, a, um, *sharpened at the end.*

**praebēo**, *ūi*, *itum*, 2. v. a. *to afford, supply.*

**praeda**, ae, f. *spoil, booty* [prehendo].

**prae-dīco**, *āvi*, l. v. a. *to speak of, mention.*

- prae-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to draw before, make across.*  
**praefectūra**, ae, f. *a country town governed by a Roman prefect.*  
**praefectus**, i, m. *a commander; fabrum, chief of engineers [prae-ficio].*  
**prae-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. *to put forward, express.*  
**prae-ficiō**, fēci, fectum, 3. v. a. *to set in command of.*  
**prae-mitto**, misi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send on.*  
**praemium**, i, n. *a reward [prae, emo].*  
**prae-ruptus**, a, um, part. praerumpo; adj. *precipitous.*  
**prae-scriptum**, i, n. *a rule, ordinance.*  
**praesens**, ntis, adj. *present, at hand [prae, sum].*  
**praesentia**, ae, f. *the present; in praesentia, for the present.*  
**prae-sēpiō**, psi, ptum, 4. v. a. *to block up, barricade.*  
**praesertim**, adv. *especially [prae, sero].*  
**prae-sidēo**, sēdi, sessum, 2. v. n. *to watch over, control.*  
**praesidium**, i, n. *a defence; a garrison.*  
**prae-sto**, stīti, stītum, 1. v. a. *to furnish, perform.*  
**prae-sum**, fūi, esse, v. n. irr. *to be at the head of, command.*  
**praeter**, prep, w. acc. *except, beside, contrary to.*  
**praetēr-ēā**, adv. *beyond that, besides.*  
**praetēr-ēo**, īvi or īi, Itum, 4. v. a. n. *to pass by or over.*  
**praetor**, ōris, m. *a praetor, one of the higher magistrates at Rome.*  
**praetōriūm**, i, n. *the general's quarters, head-quarters in camp.*  
**praetōrius**, a, um, *belonging to a praetor or general; cohors, the general's body-guard; provincia, governed by one with the rank of praetor; subst. m. an ex-praetor.*  
**praetūra**, ae, f. *the praetorship.*  
**prēmo**, pressi, pressum, 3. v. a. *to press hard, distress.*  
**prīdem**, adv. usu. with iam, *long ago.*  
**prīdiē**, adv. *on the day before [prae, dies].*  
**prīmo**, adv. *at first.*  
**prīmum**, adv. *first; quam pr. as soon as possible.*  
**prīmus**, a, um, sup. adj. *first [prior].*  
**prīncēps**, īpis, adj. *first; subst. a leader; a chieftain [primus, capio].*  
**prīor**, us, gen. ōris, comp. adj. *the former, first of two [pro].*  
**prīstinus**, a, um, *former, previous [prior].*  
**prīus-quam**, comp. adv. *before that.*  
**prīvātus**, a, um, part. privo; adj. *private; subst. m. a private individual.*

- pro**, prep. w. abl. *before, in front of, on account of, in consideration of; pro se quisque, each for himself.*
- prōbo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to approve, gain approval for.*
- prō-cēdo**, ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. *to go forward, advance.*
- prō-clivis**, e, *sloping forward, easy [clivus].*
- prōcul**, adv. *far off, at a distance.*
- prō-curro**, i, cursum, 3. v. n. *to run forward.*
- prō-do**, dīdi, dītum, 3. v. a. *to betray.*
- prō-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead out, lengthen, bring forward.*
- proellor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. *to fight.*
- proellum**, i, n. *a battle, fighting.*
- prōfectiō**, ōnis, f. *a start, setting out [proficiscor].*
- prō-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irr. *to carry or push forward, draw out.*
- prō-ficiō**, fēci, fectum, 3. v. a. n. *to avail, make progress [facio].*
- prōficiscor**, fectus, 3. v. dep. *to set out [id.].*
- prō-fūgiō**, fūgi, 3. v. n. *to take to flight, escape.*
- prō-grēdiōr**, gressus, 3. v. dep. *to go forth, advance [gradior].*
- prō-hībēo**, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. *to hinder, exclude; to protect [habeo].*
- prō-icō**, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. *to throw away, abandon [iacio].*
- prō-indē** or **prōindē**, adv. *hence, therefore.*
- prō-lūo**, lūi, lūtum, 3. v. a. *to wash away or down.*
- prō-mulgo**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to publish, make known.*
- prō-nuntiō**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to announce; put to the vote.*
- prōpē**, (comp. ius) prep. w. acc. *near; adv. nearly, almost.*
- prō-pello**, pūli, pulsum, 3. v. a. *to drive off.*
- prōpērē**, adv. *hastily [properus].*
- prōpinquitas**, ātis, f. *nearness.*
- prōpinquus**, a, um, *near, neighbouring; subst. m. a relative.*
- prōpior**, ius, comp. adj. *nearer [prope].*
- prō-pōno**, pōsūi, pōsitum, 3. v. a. *to set before (one), to propose, offer.*
- prōpōsitum**, i, n. *a purpose, intention [propono].*
- propter**, prep. w. acc. *on account of.*
- prō-rīpiō**, ūi, reptum, 3. v. a. *with se, to hurry away [rapio].*
- prō-sēquor**, sēcūtus, 3. v. dep. *to escort; vocibus, to shout after.*
- prō-tēgo**, texi, tectum, 3. v. a. *to cover, protect.*
- prō-tinus**, adv. *forthwith, straightway [tenus].*
- prō-vīdēo**, vīdi, vīsum, 2. v. a. *to provide.*
- prōvinciā**, ae, f. *a province.*
- prō-vōco**, āvi, 1. v. a. *to call forth, invite.*

**proximē**, adv. (sup. of prope), *very near*; quam p. *as near as possible*.

**proximus**, a, um, sup. adj. *nearest, very near* [prope].

**publicē**, adv. *publicly, on behalf of the State*.

**publicus**, a, um, *belonging to the people or State*; subst. n. *a public storehouse or treasury* [populus].

**pūdōr**, ōris, m. *shame, sense of honour*.

**pugna**, ae, f. *a fight, battle*.

**pugno**, āvi, l. v. n. *to fight*.

**purgo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to clear, excuse* [pūrigo = purus ago].

**pūto**, āvi, l. v. n. *to think*.

**Q.**, abbrev. for Quintus, a Roman (first) name.

**quā**, adv. *where, by which way* [abl. f. of qui, sc. via].

**quadringenti**, ae, a, num. adj. *four hundred* [quattuor, centum].

**quaero**, sivi, situm, 3. v. a. *to seek, ask about*.

**quaestor**, ōris, m. *a quaestor, a Roman magistrate, who had charge of the revenues* [quaero].

**quam**, adv. *as, than, how*; w. sup. adj. or adv. *as ... as possible*.

**quantus**, a, um, *as great, how great*; subst. n. *so much as*.

**quā-rē**, adv. *wherefore* [abl. quae, res].

**quartus**, a, um, ord. num. adj. *the fourth*; q. decimus, *the fourteenth*.

**quāternus**, a, um, distrib. num. adj. *four a piece*.

**quattuor**, num. adj. *four*.

**quattuor-vīri**, ōrum, m. *a body of four magistrates*.

**quērīmōnia**, ae, f. *a complaint* [queror].

**quēror**, questus, 3. v. dep. *to complain, lament*.

**qui**, quae, quod, gen. cuius, rel. pron. *who, which, what*; abl. quo w. comp. and subjunct. = ut, *in order that*.

**qui**, quae or qua, quod, indef. pron. after si or ne, *any*.

**qui-cumque**, quae-, quod-, rel. pron. *whoever, whatever*.

**quīdem**, adv. *indeed*; ne ... quidem, *not even, neither*.

**quīētus**, a, um, part. quiesco; adj. *quiet, peaceful*.

**quīn**, conj. *that not, but that* [qui, ne = non].

**quin-dēcim**, num. adj. *fifteen* [quinque].

**quīnquāginta**, num. adj. *fifty*.

**quīnquē**, num. adj. *five*.

**quis**, quid, indef. pron. *anyone, anything*.

**quis-quam**, quae-, quic-, indef. pron. *anyone, anything*.

**quo**, adv. *whither*; also = ad quod, *to which*.

**quō-ad**, adv. *until, as long as*.

**quōd**, conj. *because, that* [qui].

**quō-minus**, or separately quo minus, conj. *by which the less, that not*.

- quō-nam, adv. interrog. *whither, to what end.*  
 quōniam, adv. *since, whereas* [quom = cum, iam].  
 quōquē, conj. *also, too.*  
 quōque-versus, adv. *in every direction, each way.*  
 quōtiens-cumquē, adv. *as often as.*
- rādix, icis, f. *a root* [piŕa].  
 rāpīditas, ātis, f. *swiftness, speed.*  
 rāpīdus, a, um, *swift* [rapio].  
 raptim, adv. *hastily, suddenly* [id.].  
 rārus, a, um, *far apart, at wide intervals.*  
 rātiō, ōnis, f. *a reason, plan, method*; r. habere alicuius, *to take account of, provide for*; to admit as a candidate [ratus].  
 rātis, is, f. *a raft, float.*  
 rātus, a, um, part. rēor, adj. *fixed, settled*; pro r. parte, *proportionally.*  
 rēceptus, ūs, m. *a retreat, refuge* [recipio].  
 rē-cipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. *to recover, take possession of*; to admit; se, *to retire* [capio].  
 rēcīto, āvi, l. v. a. *to read, recite.*  
 rectē, adv. *rightly, safely.*  
 rectus, a, um, part. rego; adj. *straight.*  
 rē-curro, i, cursum, 3. v. n. *to run back, return.*  
 rē-cūso, āvi, l. v. a. *to refuse* [causa].
- red-do, dīdi, dītum, 3. v. a. *to restore, deliver.*  
 rēd-ēo, ivi, or ii, itum, 4. v. n. *to go back, return, be referred.*  
 rēd-igo, ēgi, actum, 3. v. a. *to bring back, reduce* [ago].  
 rēd-imo, ēmi, emptum, 3. v. a. *to purchase, acquire* [emo].  
 rē-dūco, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. *to lead back, bring* (to a point).  
 rē-fēro, rettūli, rēlātum, v. a. irr. *to bring back, report*; pedem, *to retreat.*  
 rē-ficīo, fēcī, fectum, 3. v. a. *to repair, refresh, rest* [facio].  
 rē-formīdo, āvi, l. v. a. *to fear, dread.*  
 rēgīo, ōnis, f. *a region, direction*; e regione, *in a line with* [rego].  
 rēlīgīo, ōnis, f. *a religious scruple, conscience.*  
 rē-linquo, liqui, lictum, 3. v. a. *to leave.*  
 rēlīquus, a, um, *remaining*; subst. m. pl. *the rest.*  
 rē-mānēo, mansi, mansum, 2. v. n. *to stay behind, remain.*  
 rēmēdīum, i, n. *a cure, remedy* [re, medeor].  
 rēmex, īgis, m. *a rower* [remus, ago].  
 rē-missus, a, um, part. remitto; adj. *indolent, negligent.*  
 rē-mitto, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send back.*

- rĕ-mōvēō, mōvi, mōtum, 2. v. a. *to move back, remove.*
- rĕmus, i, m. *an oar.*
- rĕ-runtio, āvi, 1. v. a. *to bring back word, report.*
- rĕ-pello, reppūli, rĕpulsum, 3. v. a. *to drive back, repel.*
- rĕpentĕ, adv. *suddenly* [repens].
- rĕ-pĕrio, reppĕri, rĕpertum, 4. v. a. *to find, ascertain* [pario].
- rĕ-prĕhendo, di, sum, 3. v. a. *to lay hold of; to blame, censure.*
- rĕ-pugno, āvi, 1. v. n. *to oppose* [pugno].
- rĕpulsa, ae, f. *a defeat, repulse* [repello].
- res, rĕi, f. *a thing, matter, circumstance, proposal.*
- re-scribo, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. *to write back, answer.*
- rĕ-servo, āvi, 1. v. a. *to keep back, reserve.*
- rĕ-sisto, stiti, 3. v. n. *to stop* w. dat. *to resist.*
- re-spicio, spexi, spectrum, 3. v. a. n. *to look back (at), regard* [specio].
- re-spondĕo, di, sum, 2. v. a. *to answer, reply.*
- responsum, i, n. *an answer, reply.*
- res-publĭca, rĕipublicae, f. *the common weal; a commonwealth, State.*
- re-stituo, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to restore* [statuo].
- rĕ-tĭnĕo, ūi, tentum, 2. v. a. *to keep, maintain* [teneo].
- rĕ-torquĕo, rsi, rtum, 2. v. a. *to bend back; pass. to double.*
- rĕ-trāho, traxi, tractum, 3. v. a. *to drag back.*
- rĕ-vertor, versus, 3. v. dep. *to return.*
- rĕ-vōco, āvi, 1. v. a. *to recall, call back.*
- rex, rĕgis, m. *a king* [rego].
- rĭpa, ae, f. *a bank.*
- rūmor, ōris, m. *a report, rumour.*
- rūpes, is, f. *a rock, cliff* [rumpo].
- rursus, adv. *again* [re-vorsus, verto].
- S., abbrev. for Sextus, a Roman (first) name.
- sācrāmentum, i, n. *the military oath* [sacro].
- saepĕ, adv. *often.*
- sāgitta, ae, f. *an arrow.*
- sāgittārius, i, m. *an archer.*
- sāgum, i, n. *a military cloak.*
- saltem, adv. *at least, even.*
- saltus, ūs, m. *a mountain pass; a chain of mountains* [salio].
- sālūs, ūtis, f. *safety, life.*
- salvus, a, um, *safe, unhurt.*
- sancio, xi, ctum, 4. v. a. *to ratify, confirm.*
- sanctus, a, um, part. sancio; adj. *holy, inviolable.*
- sāno, āvi, 1. v. a. *to cure, make healthy.*
- sarcĭna, ae, f. *a burden, pack;* pl. *baggage carried by soldiers.*
- sarcĭnārius, a, um, *of baggage; iumenta, baggage animals.*
- sarcio, si, tum, 4. v. a. *to mend, repair, make up for.*

- sātis, indecl. subst. or adv. *enough*.
- sātis-fāciō, fēci, factum, 3. v. n. *to do enough, satisfy*.
- saxum, i, n. *a stone, rock*.
- scālae, ārum, f. (sing. rare) *scaling ladders* [scando].
- scāpha, ae, f. *a light boat* [σκάφη].
- scēlus, ēris, n. *a crime*.
- sciēnter, adv. *skilfully* [scio].
- sciēntia, ae, f. *skill, knowledge* [id.].
- scribo, psi, ptum, 3. v. a. *to write*.
- scūtātus, a, um, *armed with the scutum, a heavy Roman shield*.
- sē, sui (no nom.), reflex. pron. *himself, herself, themselves*.
- sē-cessiō, ōnis, f. *a going apart, secession* [sē = sēd, apart, cedo].
- sē-clūdo, si, sum, 3. v. a. *to shut off, separate* [sē, claudo].
- sēcrēto, adv. *separately, secretly* [sē-cerno].
- sēcundus, a, um, *successful; proelium, a victory* [sequor].
- sēd, conj. *but*.
- sēd-itiō, ōnis, f. *a mutiny, sedition* [sēd, eo].
- segnis, e, *slow, inactive*.
- sē-mēstris, e, *of six months* [sex, mensis].
- sē-mōtus, a, um, part. se-moveo; adj. *separate, apart*.
- semper, adv. *always*.
- sēnātor, ōris, m. *a senator, member of the Senate of Rome*.
- sēnātōrius, a, um, *belonging to a senator; ordo, the senatorial order*.
- sēnātus, ūs, m. *the Senate, council of elders or nobles at Rome*.
- sententiā, ae, f. *an opinion, motion in the Senate*.
- sentio, si, sum, 4. v. a. *to feel, perceive*.
- sēpārātim, adv. *separately, apart* [separo].
- septem, num. adj. *seven*.
- septem-dēcim, num. adj. *seventeen*.
- septimū, a, um, ord. num. adj. *seventh*.
- septuāgintā, num. adj. *seventy*.
- sēquor, sēcūtus, 3. v. dep. *to follow, pursue*.
- sermo, ōnis, m. *speech, conversation* [sero, ui].
- servo, āvi, l. v. a. *to keep, observe*.
- servus, i, m. *a slave* [sero, ui].
- sese, strengthened form of se.
- sestertius, i, gen. pl. um, m. *a small silver coin, a sesterce, worth 2½ asses (a little over 2d.), also written HS [semis, tertius, the third a half, i.e. 2½]*.
- sex, num. adj. *six*.
- Sex., abbrev. for Sextus, a Roman (first) name.
- sexāgīes, num. adv. *sixty times*, see note on 23, l. 14.
- sex-centi, ae, a, num. adj. *six hundred*.
- sextus, a, um, ord. num. adj. *sixth*.
- sī, conj. *if*.

**sic**, adv. *so, thus.*

**significātiō**, ōnis, f. *an expression of feeling by shouts, etc.*

**significo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to give notice, express feeling by shouts, etc* [signum, facio].

**signum**, i, n. *a sign, signal; a military standard; inferre, to make an advance.*

**silentium**, i, n. *silence* [sileo].

**similis**, e, *like, similar* (simul).

**simul**, adv. *together, at the same time; conj. as soon as.*

**simulātiō**, ōnis, f. *feigning, pretence* [simulo].

**simul-atque**, conj. *as soon as.*

**sinē**, prep. w. abl. *without.*

**singūli**, ae, a, distrib. num. adj. *one apiece, cf. bini.*

**sinistra**, ae, f. *the left hand* (sc. manus).

**socius**, i, m. *an ally.*

**solātium**, i, n. *a comfort, consolation* [solor].

**solēo**, itus, 2. v. semi-dep. *to be wont, accustomed.*

**solus**, a, um, *alone.*

**solvere**, vi, solūtum, 3. v. a. *to loosen; navem, to weigh anchor.*

**sors**, tis, f. *a lot, casting of lots.*

**spātium**, i, n. *a space, time.*

**spēro**, āvi, l. v. a. *to hope (for), expect, imagine.*

**spes**, ēi, f. *hope.*

**spontē**, abl. f., usu. with poss. pron. *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

**stātim**, adv. *immediately* [sto].

**stātiō**, ōnis, f. *a position, station; an outpost, the main guard* [id.].

**stātūmen**, inis, n. *a support, rib of a boat* [statuo].

**stātūo**, ūi, ūtum, 3. v. a. *to set up, pitch; to decide.*

**stipendium**, i, n. *pay, soldiers' wages* [stips, pendo].

**stipes**, itis, in. *a post, log.*

**sto**, stēti, stātum, l. v. n. *to stand; cum aliquo, to be on one's side; per aliquem, to be owing to one.*

**stūdēo**, ūi, 2. v. a. n. *to be zealous, eager; w. dat. to be bent on.*

**stūdium**, i, n. *zeal, eagerness, ambition.*

**sub**, prep. w. acc. *up to, just before, towards; w. abl. under, below, at the time of.*

**sūb-ēo**, ivi or ii, itum, 4. v. a. *to undergo, submit to.*

**sūb-icō**, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. *to set on, suborn* [iacio].

**sūbiectē**, ius, issimē, adv. *submissively* [subicio].

**sūbito**, adv. *suddenly.*

**sūbitus**, a, um, *sudden* [subeo].

**sub-lātus**, a, um, part. tollo.

**sub-lēvo**, āvi, l. v. a. *to help up; aid, support.*

**sub-mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3. v. a. *to send up, send to help.*

**sub-mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, 2. v. a. *to dislodge, drive off.*

**sub-sēquor**, sēcūtus, 3. v. dep. *to follow after.*

**subsidiārius**, a, um, *in reserve.*



- subsĭdĭum**, i. n. a support, relief; pl. reserves.  
**sub-sisto**, stĭti, 3. v. n. to stop, stay behind.  
**sub-sum**, fĭi, esse, v. n. irr. to be near, at hand.  
**sub-vĕnĭo**, vĕni, ventum, 4. v. n. to aid, help.  
**suc-cĕdo**, ssi, ssum, 3. v. n. to advance up; to relieve, take the place of.  
**suc-censĕo**, sŭi, sum, 2. v. n. to be angry, bear a grudge against.  
**sŭdes**, is, f. a stake, pile.  
**suffrāgor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. to vote for, recommend.  
**sum**, fĭi, esse, v. subst. irr. to be.  
**summa**, ae, f. the chief point, chief power; the main body.  
**summus**, a, um, sup. adj. highest, chief, utmost [superus].  
**sŭmo**, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. v. a. to take, borrow [sub, emo].  
**sŭpĕrĭor**, us, comp. adj. higher; superior; former [superus].  
**sŭpĕro**, āvi, 1. v. a., to go past, overflow; to surpass.  
**sup-pĕto**, ĭvi, ĭtum, 3. v. n. to be at hand, be present.  
**supplĭcĭum**, i, n. (capital) punishment; pl. hardships [supplicio].  
**sup-porto**, āvi, 1. v. a. to bring up, supply.  
**sup-prĭmo**, pressi, pressum, 3. v. a. to check [premo].  
**sŭprā**, adv. above; prep. w. acc. above, beyond.
- sus-cĭpĭo**, cĕpi, ceptum, 3. v. a. to undertake [sub, capio].  
**suspĭcĭo**, ōnis, f. a suspicion [suspicio].  
**suspĭcor**, ātus, 1. v. dep. to suspect [sub, specio].  
**sus-tĭnĕo**, ŭi, tentum, 2. v. a. to check, halt; withstand, endure [teneo].  
**sus-tŭli**, perf. tollo.  
**sŭus**, a, um, poss. pron. his, her, its, their [se].
- T.** abbrev. for Titus, a Roman (first) name.
- tābernācŭlum**, i, n. a tent — [taberna].  
**tābŭlātum**, i, n. a floor, story — [tabula].  
**tālis**, e, such, of such a kind.  
**tam**, adv. so, so much.  
**tāmen**, conj., however, nevertheless.  
**tāmetsi**, conj. although.  
**tantum-mōdo**, adv. only.  
**tantus**, a, um, such, so great; subst. n. so much; abl. tanto with comp. by so much, so much the—.
- tardĭtas**, ātis, f. slowness [tardus].  
**tardo**, āvi, 1. v. a. to make slow, retard [tardus].  
**tectum**, i, n. a roof, house [tego].  
**tĕgo**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. to cover, conceal; part. pass. tectus, a, um. decked.  
**tĕlum**, i. n. a missile weapon; esp. a javelin.  
**tĕmĕrĕ**, adv. at random, rashly.

- tempestas**, ātis, f. a storm, season [tempus].  
**templum**, i, n. a temple [tēplovos].  
**tempto**, āvi, l. v. a. to try, sound, assail [tendo].  
**tempus**, ōris, n. time.  
**tēnēo**, ūi, tentum, 2. v. a. to hold, keep to, restrain.  
**tēnūis**, e, small, petty [tener].  
**tergum**, i, n. the back, rear.  
**terni**, ae, a, distrib. num. adj. three apiece [ter, tres].  
**terra**, ae, f. earth.  
**terrēo**, ūi, itum, 2. v. a. to alarm, frighten.  
**terror**, ōris, m. fright, panic.  
**tertius**, a, um, ord. num. adj. third; t. decimus, thirteenth.  
**tīmēo**, ūi, 2. v. a. to fear.  
**tīmīdē**, ius, issimē, adv. timorously.  
**tīmor**, ōris, m. fear, alarm.  
**tollo**, sustūli, sublātum, 3. v. a. irr. to take up, remove, carry away, abolish; ancoram, to weigh.  
**tormentum**, i, n. an engine of war [torqueo].  
**tot**, num. adj. indecl. so many.  
**tōtīdem**, num. adj. indecl. just as many.  
**tōtus**, a, um, the whole of, all; wholly.  
**trabs**, ābis, f. a beam.  
**trā-do**, dīdi, dītum, 3. v. a. to hand over, deliver [trans].  
**tra-dūco**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. to lead across, bring over [id].  
**trāgūla**, ae, f. a heavy javelin [traho].  
**trāho**, xi, ctum, 3. v. a. to draw, drag.  
**trā-īciō**, iēcī, iectum, 3. v. a. to send across [trans, iacio].  
**trā-no**, nāvi, l. v. a. to swim across [trans].  
**trans**, prep. w. acc. across.  
**transcendo**, dī, sum, 3. v. a. n. to cross, climb over [scando].  
**trans-curro**, i, cursum, 3. v. n. to run or sail past.  
**trans-ēo**, īvi or īi, itum, 4. v. a. n. to cross; come over, desert.  
**trans-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irr. to bring over, shift, transfer.  
**trans-grēdiōr**, gressus, 3. v. dep. to go across, cross over [gradior].  
**trans-mārinus**, a, um, beyond sea, transmarine [mare].  
**trans-porto**, āvi, l. v. a. to carry across.  
**trans-versus**, a, um, going across, cross [verto].  
**trē-centi**, ae, a, num. adj. three hundred [tres].  
**trē-dēcim**, num. adj. thirteen [id.].  
**trēpidanter**, ius, issimē, adv. nervously, hurriedly [tre-pido].  
**trēs**, ia, gen. ium, num. adj. three.  
**tribūnīciūs**, a, um, belonging to a tribune, tribunicial.  
**tribūnus**, i, m. a tribune; plebis, a trib. of the plebs, one of ten annual magistrates; militum, a military trib. see Introd. II. § 6 [tribus].

třibňo, ůi, ůtum, 3. v. a. to grant, render.

třidňum, i, n. three days' space [tres, dies].

třigintā, num. adj. thirty.

třiplex, ěis, adj. threefold, in three lines [ter, plico].

tűeor, ětus, 2. v. dep. to defend, protect.

tum, adv. then; cum...tum, both...and.

tűmultus, ůs, m. an uproar; esp. a Gallic war, war in Italy.

tűmůlus, i, m. a mound, hill [tumeo].

turbātē, adv. confusedly [turbo].

turbůlentus, a, um, restless, turbulent [turba].

turpis, e, shameful, disgraceful.

turris, is, f. a tower.

tűto, adv. safely [tutus].

tűtor, ātus, 1. v. dep. freq. to defend, relieve [tueor].

tűtus, a, um, safe [id].

űber, ěris, adj. (comp. ěřior, sup. errěmus) full, ample.

űbě, adv. where, when.

űběquē, adv. everywhere.

űltěrior, us, comp. adj. further, opp. cěterior [ultra].

űltěmus, a, um, sup. adj. the furthest, last [id].

űltrō, adv. to the further side; u. citrōque, to and fro; beyond expectation, actually.

űnā, adv. together, usu. with cum [unus].

űndě, adv. whence.

űnděcim, num. adj. eleven [unus].

űnděquē, adv. from all parts, on all sides.

űněversus, a, um, all, the whole [unus, verto].

űnus, a, um, gen. ius, num. adj. one, alone.

urbānus, a, um, of a city; esp. of the city (Rome).

urbs, bis, f. a city; esp. the city, Rome.

űsus, ůs, m, use, usefulness, experience; usui esse, to be useful.

ut or ůti, adv. and conj. as, when, how, that, so that, in order that.

űter, tris, m. a skin, bladder.

űter, tra, trum, gen. trěus, pron. which of two.

űter-que, ultra-, utrum-, pron. both, either.

űti, another form of ut.

űtrimquē, adv. on both sides [uterque].

űtor, ůsus, 3. v. dep. to use, adopt, enjoy.

vāco, āvi, 1. v. n. to be empty, unoccupied.

vācůus, a, um, empty, vacant [vaco].

vādōsus, a, um, shallow, full of shoals.

vādum, i, n, a ford, shallow water.

vāgor, ātus, 1. v. dep. to wander, rove [vagus].

valěo, ůi, ětum, 2. v. n. to be strong, powerful; to avail.

vālětűdo, ěnis, f. health; esp. ill-health.

- vallis, is, f. a valley.  
 vallum, i. n. a stockade; rampart of a camp.  
 vārius, a, um, changeful, chequered.  
 vas, vāsis, n. a utensil, implement.  
 vectigal, ālis, n. a tax; pl. revenues.  
 vēhēmenter, adv. violently, strongly [vehemens].  
 vēņo, vēni, ventum, 4. v. n. to come.  
 ventus, i. m. a wind.  
 verbum, i. n. a word; in haec verba, after this form.  
 vēreor, itus, 2. v. dep. to fear.  
 vergo (no perf.), 3. v. a. n. to lie, incline.  
 vēro, adv. in truth, however.  
 verto, ti, sum, 3. v. a. to turn; in aliquid, to interpret as.  
 vērus, a, um, true, real.  
 vesper, ēris or ēri, abl. ēri, m. evening [ἔσπερος].  
 vētērānus, a, um, composed of old soldiers, veteran [vetus].  
 vēto, ūi, itum, 1. v. a. to forbid.  
 vētus, ēris, adj. old, former, of long standing; veteran.  
 vētustas, ātis, f. antiquity, ancient times.  
 vīa, ae, f. a road, way [veho].  
 victōriā, ae, f. a victory [vinco].  
 victus, ūs, m. living, food [vivo].  
 vīcus, i, m. a street [ōikos].  
 vīdēo, vīdi, vīsum, 2. v. a. to see: pass., to seem.  
 vīgīliā, ae, f. a watch (of the night); a watch, guard of soldiers [vigil].  
 vīginti, num. adj. twenty.  
 vīmen, īnis, n. an osier, withe [vitis].  
 vinco, vīci, victum, 3. v. a. n. to conquer; to prevail.  
 vindīco, āvi, 1. v. a. to claim: in libertatem, to deliver [vindex].  
 vīnĕa, ae, f. a penthouse, gallery; orig. a vineyard [vinum].  
 virtus, ūtis, f. virtue, valour [vir].  
 vis, vim, vi (no gen.) f. force, violence; pl. vires, ĩum, strength, power.  
 vīso, sī, sum, 3. v. a. freq. to view, visit [video].  
 vīta, ae, f. life [vivo].  
 vītium, i, n. a fault, defect.  
 vīto, āvi, 1. v. a. to avoid, shun.  
 vīvo, xi, ctum, 3. v. n. to live.  
 vīvus, a, um, living, alive.  
 vix, adv. scarcely, hardly.  
 vōcābŭlum, i, n. a name [voco].  
 vōco, āvi, 1. v. a. to call, summon.  
 vōlo, ūi, velle, v. a. n. irr. to wish, will.  
 vōluntas, ātis, f. a wish, will.  
 vox, vōcis, f. a voice: pl. expressions, esp. of abuse [voco].  
 vulgo, adv. commonly, in large numbers [vulgus].  
 vulnĕro, āvi, 1. v. a. to wound.  
 vulnus, ēris, n. a wound, loss.  
 vultus, ūs, m. a face, countenance [volo].

## INDEX.

N.B.—The Roman numerals refer to the pages of the Introduction; the others to the chapters.

- Ab*, with name of town, 11.  
 11; with measure of distance, 65. 8.
- Ablative absolute, 25. 19;  
 used conditionally, 74. 13;  
 subordinate to another, 30.  
 21; with concessive conj.,  
 67. 15.
- Ablative of accompaniment,  
 34. 5; attendant circumstances, 85. 20; cause, 52.  
 1; direction of motion, 40.  
 4; duration, 7. 21; manner without epithet, 45.  
 24; origin, 24. 14.
- ad* with name of town, 31.  
 5; 41. 8.
- alter ... alter*, reversed, 35.  
 14; cf. 38. 5.
- amplius* without *quam*, 46. 18.
- ante* with expressions of  
 time, 5. 17; 11. 6.
- antesignani*, xxiii.
- Asyndeton, 20. 9: to point  
 contrast, 11. 1; 19. 11.
- atque*, 'but,' 44. 18.
- Attraction of antecedent into  
 rel. clause, 7. 21; 8. 7;—  
 relative to case of anteced.,  
 54. 5; pronouns to gender  
 of complement, 47. 6; 48.  
 23; *quisque* to case of *suis*,  
 83. 6.
- Auxiliary troops, xxiii. xxiv.
- Baggage, xxii.
- Camp, construction of, xxv.  
 xxvi.
- Cavalry, xxiii.
- Centurions, order of rank,  
 etc., xix. xx.
- Century, strength of, xix.
- certior fieri ne*, 64. 11.
- Change from act. to pass.  
 infin. 61. 20; oblique peti-  
 tion to oblique narration,  
 2. 11; 17. 4;—of subject  
 of sentence, 81. 9.
- Clodius, his death, xiii.
- cohors prætoria*, 'body  
 guard,' xxvi.
- Compromises proposed by  
 Caesar, xviii.

- concilium* disting. from *consilium*, 19. 11.  
 Conference at Lucca, xii.  
 Consecutive clause introd. by *qui*, 21. 19.  
*Constructio ad sensum*, 46. 8.  
 Co-ordinating relative, 36. 11.  
 Crassus, his death, xii.  
*cum*, 'whenever,' with hist. tenses of indic., 79. 7; ... *tum*, 'not only ... but,' 58. 10.  
 Curio bribed to support Caesar, xv.  
 Dative of predication or purpose, 32. 25; 40. 10.  
 Debate on Caesar and Pompey's recall, xvi.  
 Disjunctive question (indirect), 25. 10.  
*dissimulo* and *simulo*, 19. 1.  
*domum ad aliquem*, 53. 6.  
 Double accusative, 54. 10.  
*dum*, 'as long as,' with past indic. 51. 18.  
*duumviri iuri dicundo*, 30. 3.  
 Ellipse, 8. 7; of *se*, 6. 13; 11. 9; 22. 3.  
 Engineers, xxv.  
 Epanaphora (repetition of word), 51. 10.  
 Equipment of legionaries, xxi. xxii.  
*evocati*, xxv.  
 Fractions, how expressed, 82. 15.  
*Gallia ulterior* and *citerior*, 33. 14.  
 Genitive after partitive words, 48. 22; w. ellipse of such words, 39. 11; ob- jective, 4. 3; 7. 28; 20. 6; 72. 9;—after participle, 69. 15;—and subjective toge- ther, 5. 12; of definition, 42. 12.  
 Gladiators, 14. 6.  
 Hendiadys, a complex idea expressed by two nouns united by a copula, 25. 17; cf. 45. 24.  
 Historical infin., 64. 8; pres. followed by impf. and plupf., 56. 10; w. primary or historical sequence, 18. 12.  
*ille*, 'the following,' 61. 12.  
 Indefinite subject of verb, 80. 3.  
 Indic. for subj. impf. of *possum*, *debeo*, etc., 48. 23; in rel. clauses in *or. obl.*, 22. 10; 47. 6; 87. 5.  
 Infin. used as subject of verb, 11. 9.  
*is*, 'the following,' 2. 5; used for clearness instead of *se*, 2. 12.  
*ita ... ut*, in limitation, 26. 8.  
 Julia, her death, xii.  
*leges Juliae*, xi.; Pompeiae, xiii.  
 Legion, organization of, xix.  
 Legions taken from Caesar, xvi., xvii.  
*lex decem tribunorum*, xiv.  
*magnum iter*, 37. 10.  
 Milo, his exile, xiii.  
*novissimus*, 'last,' 53. 10.  
 Officers, xxiv.  
*officium* and *beneficium*, 34. 9.  
*Oratio obliqua*, introduced abruptly, 20. 18; 22. 3;— virtual, 20. 11.  
 Order of battle, xxii., xxiii.

- Participle used substantively, 74. 2.  
*patronus* of a State, 35. 14.  
*per aliquem stare*, 41. 13.  
 Periphrasis for fut. infin., 9. 29; 40. 28.  
 Personal pass. constr. w. verbs of saying, 14. 6; 73. 6.  
*plenus* w. abl. 74. 27.  
*Praetorium*, xxvi.  
*primus pilus*, xx.  
*priusquam* w. subj., 41. 22.  
*proinde* in exhortation, 13. 7.  
 Provinces, how assigned, xiii. ; 6. 19.  
*Provincia* (Gallica), xi.  
*publicani*, xi.  
*quattuorviri iuri dicundo*, the annual chief magistrates of a free town or colony, 23. 16.  
 Rhetorical questions, infin. or subj., 9. 19; 32. 12.  
 Rubicon, crossed by Caesar, 8. 1.
- Sallust, his *Jugurtha* and *Catiline*, ix.  
*se* omitted before infin., 6. 13; 11. 9; 22. 3.  
 Senate held outside Rome, 6. 1.  
*Senatus auctoritas*, xvii.  
*simul* = *simulatque*, 30. 11.  
 Singular verb with more than one subject, 2. 24.  
*spero* w. pres. infin., 8. 15.  
*sub* w. abl. of time, 27. 9; w. acc. of time, 28. 8; in composition, 43. 16.  
 Subjunctive, jussive, 10. 6; 85. 47;—deliberative, 72. 5.  
 Substantival *ut*-clause, 29. 8; 44. 1; 47. 1.  
*totus*, used adverbially, 4. 15.  
 Triumvirate, first, x.  
*ultro*, 'actually,' 32. 15; 79. 19.  
*ut* supplied from previous *ne*, 19. 3.  
 Virtual *or. obl.*, 20. 11; cf. 21. 4.





# MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

18mo, Eighteenpence each.

The following contain Introductions, Notes, and **Vocabularies**, and in some cases **Exercises** :—

**ACCIDENCE, LATIN, AND EXERCISES.** Arranged for Beginners. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**Aeschylus.**—**PROMETHEUS VINCTUS.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

**Arrian.**—**Selections.** With Exercises. By Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Aulus Gellius, Stories from.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A., Assistant Master at Westminster.

**Caesar.**—**THE HELVETIAN WAR.** Being Selections from Book I. of The Gallic War. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**THE INVASION OF BRITAIN.** Being Selections from Books IV. and V. of The Gallic War. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI.** By C. COLBECK, M.A.

**THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I.** By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**BOOKS II. and III.** By the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

**BOOK IV.** By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A., Assistant Master at Dulwich College.

**BOOK V.** By C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant Master at Harrow.

**BOOK VI.** By the same.

**BOOK VII.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**THE CIVIL WAR. BOOK I.** By M. MONTGOMERY, M.A. [*In the Press.*]

**Cicero.**—**DE SENECTUTE.** By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

**DE AMICITIA.** By the same.

**STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., and A. V. JONES, M.A.

**Euripides.**—**ALCESTIS.** By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**MEDEA.** By A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

[*In the Press.*]

**HECUBA.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Eutropius.**—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**Herodotus: Tales from Herodotus.** Atticised by G. S. FARNELL, M.A. [*In the Press.*]

**Homer.**—**ILIAD. BOOK I.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**BOOK XVIII.** By S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.

**ODYSSEY. BOOK I.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Horace.**—**ODES. BOOK I.** By T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1s. 6d.

**BOOK II.** By the same.

**BOOK III.** By the same.

**BOOK IV.** By the same.

**Livy.**—**BOOK I.** By H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

**BOOK XXI.** Adapted from Mr. CAPE'S Edition. By J. E. MELHuish, M.A.

**BOOK XXII.** By the same.

**THE HANNIBALIAN WAR.** Being part of the XXI. and XXII. Books of LIVY. Adapted for Beginners. By G. C. MACAULAY, M.A.

**THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE.** Being part of the XXIV. and XXV. Books of LIVY. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By G. RICHARDS, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

---

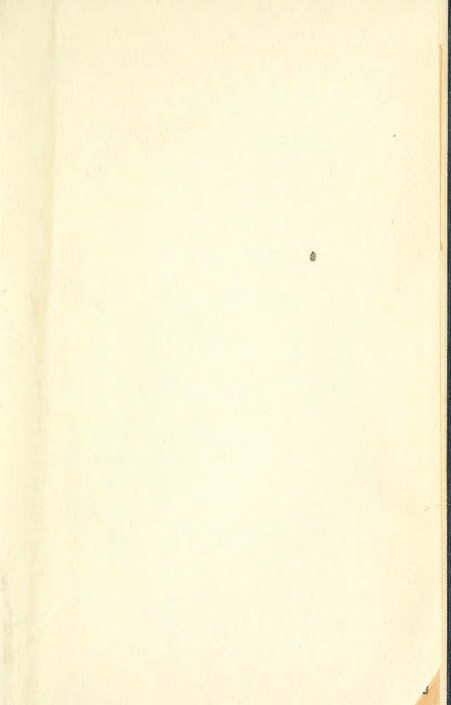
MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

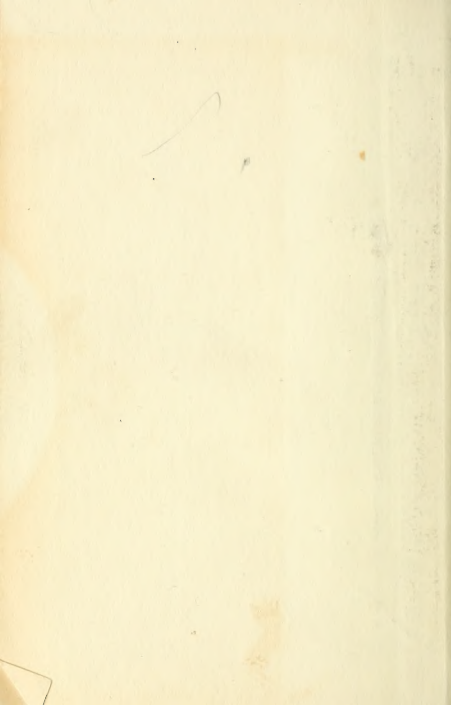
- Lucian.**—EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN. With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- Nepos.**—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY. With Exercises. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.
- Ovid.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAC VERSE. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.  
STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES. With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- Phaedrus.**—SELECT FABLES. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.
- Thucydides.**—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. Book I. Chs. 89-117 and 228-238. With Exercises. By F. H. COLSON, M.A.
- Virgil.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
BUCOLICS. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
GEORGICS. Book I. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book II. By Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A.  
ÆNEID. Book I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
Book II. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book III. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book IV. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.  
Book V. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book VI. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book VII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book VIII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book IX. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.  
Book X. By S. G. OWEN, M.A.
- Xenophon.**—ANABASIS. Selections, adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.  
Book I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
Book I. With Exercises. By E. A. WELLS, M.A.  
Book II. By the same.  
Book III. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
Book IV. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.  
SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV. With Exercises. By the same.  
SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. With Exercises. By A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge.
- The following contain Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary:—
- Cicero.**—SELECT LETTERS. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A.
- Herodotus.**—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. AND VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.
- Horace.**—SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. By Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A.  
SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. By H. A. DALTON, M.A., Assistant Master at Winchester.
- Plato.**—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.
- Terence.**—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.
- The Greek Elegiac Poets.**—FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D.
- Thucydides.**—BOOK IV. Chs. 1-41. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

\* \* \* *Other Volumes to follow.*



Seite 14





LL

CL283dcMo

Caesar, C. Julius.

De bello civili

De bello civili commentariorum I; ed.  
by Montgomery.

17235

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
LIBRARY

DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET



